



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

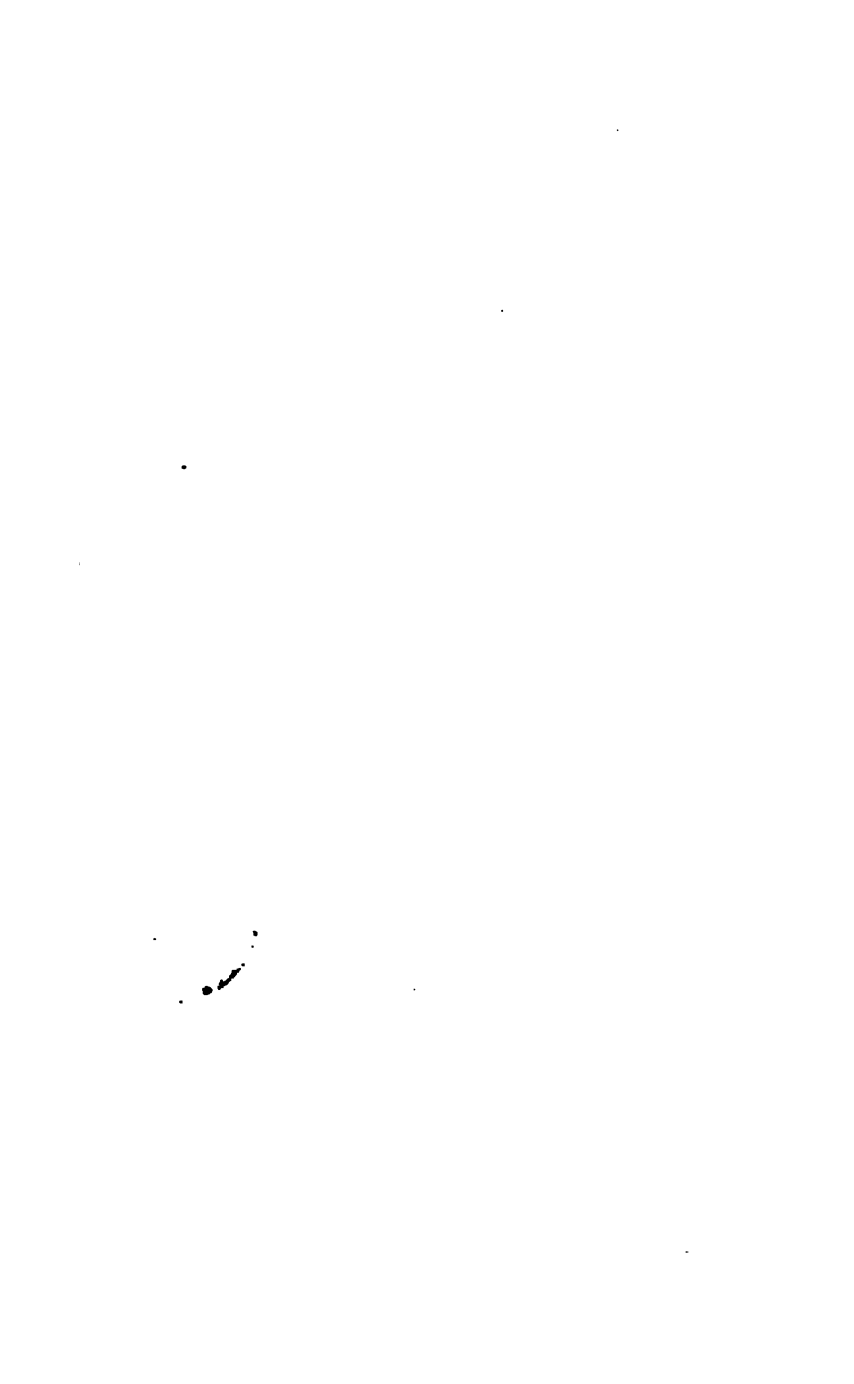
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

DR. DE WELDYCZ'
GERMAN GRAMMAR

4/-





▲

THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

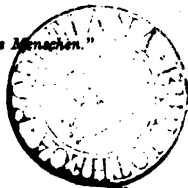
IN THREE PARTS.

BY

A. S. DE WELDYCZ, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE AT THE BURY GRAMMAR SCHOOL
THE MANCHESTER COMMERCIAL SCHOOLS; HIGHER BROUGHTON SCHOOL;
THE BURY ATHENÆUM; ETC., ETC.

"Mit Unvollkommenheit zu ringen, ist das Loos des Menschen."



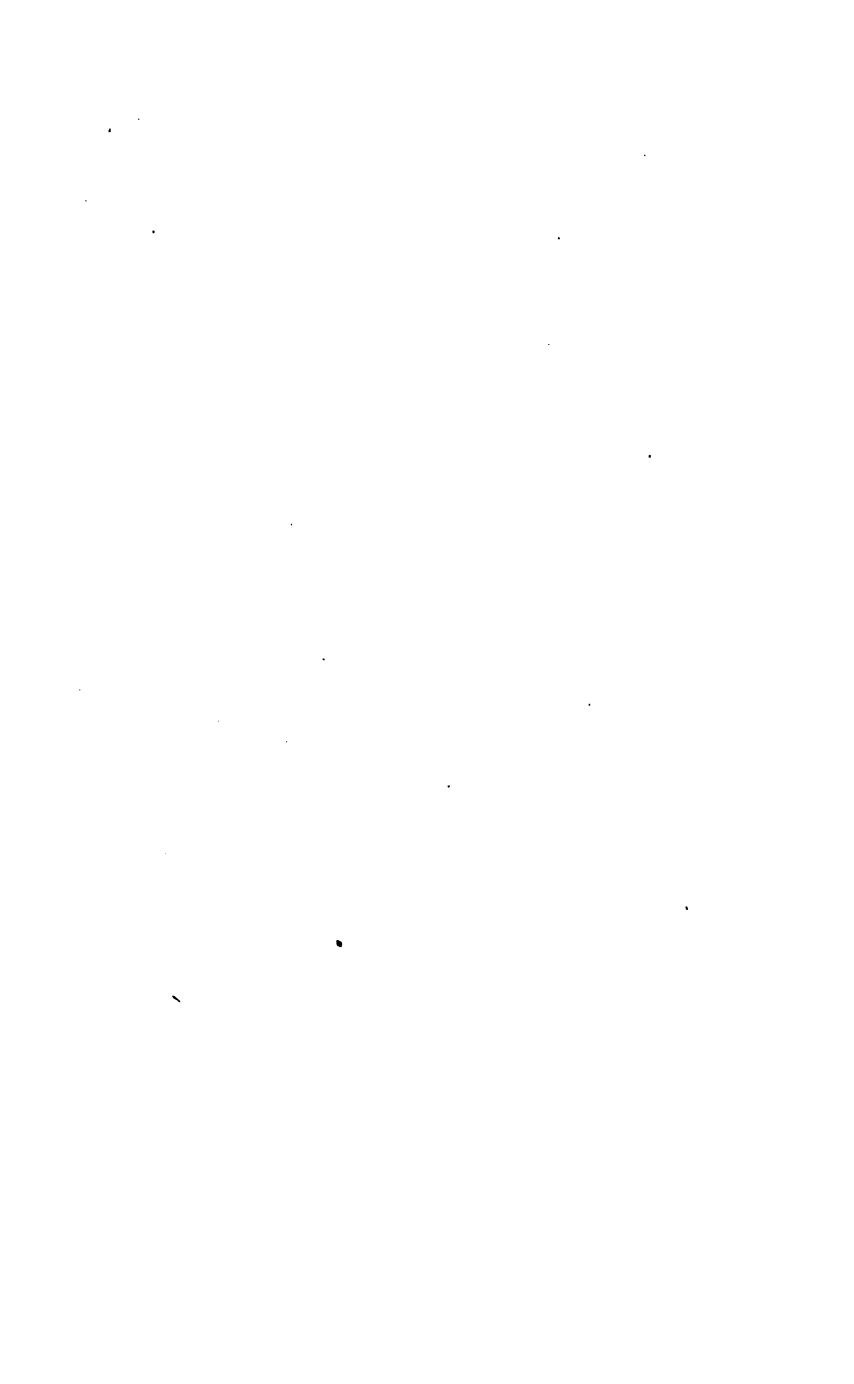
LONDON :
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
DUBLIN: M'GLASHAN AND GILL
EDINBURGH: SETON AND MACKENZIE.
GLASGOW: DAVID BRYCE & CO.
MANCHESTER: GALT & CO. BURY: T. CROMPTON.
1865.

303. g. 41.

[ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL]

THIS WORK,
THE RESULT OF MANY YEARS' OBSERVATION,
AND OF THE LABOUR OF THE MIDSUMMER VACATION, 1865,
IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED BY
THE AUTHOR TO
THE PARENTS AND FRIENDS
OF HIS PRESENT AND LATE PUPILS,
AS A TRIBUTE OF GRATITUDE
FOR THE CONTINUED KINDNESS AND SUPPORT HE HAS RECEIVED
FROM THEM IN THE DISCHARGE OF HIS ONEROUS
AND MANIFOLD DUTIES.

BROUGHTON LANE,
Manchester, 1865.



AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

THE shortest and decidedly the surest way of learning a foreign language is to study it at once and thoroughly, according to a concise set of Grammatical Rules, which if applied practically to well arranged and suitable exercises will rapidly ensure proficiency. Long experience in the tuition of the youth of this country, and my position as German Master at several public and private schools and institutions, have induced me to compose and publish this little volume, hoping to spare through it much trouble to pupils and teachers. Before entering on its study let me earnestly impress on the learner's mind the golden maxim, "Never learn a fresh rule, or do an exercise upon it, unless you have perfectly understood and mastered the preceding one."

At the same publishers may be had two Exercise

Books : No. I. on German Declensions and No. II. on German Conjugations, containing tables arranged systematically and adapted to this or any other Grammar. I have found them an exceedingly useful auxiliary in class-teaching, as they enable the pupil to do his declensions and conjugations with neatness and rapidity, and the teacher to detect and correct the errors at a glance. I am satisfied from experience that the use of these Exercise Books in a class is of great benefit to both the teacher and the pupils.

I shall receive with pleasure and thanks any critical review or suggestion from competent scholars, as by such means only can accuracy and perfection be attained.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	ix.
------------------------	-----

PART I.—THE GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. On Pronunciation	1
II. Introduction to Grammar	4
III. Of Articles and Determinative Words	5
IV. Of Substantives	7
V. Of Adjectives	17
VI. Of Numeral Adjectives	22
VII. Of Pronouns.	26
VIII. Of Verbs	35
IX. Of Infinitives and Participles	74
X. Of Adverbs	79
XI. Of Prepositions	84
XII. Of Conjunctions and Interjections	89

PART II.—THE SYNTAX.

I. Introduction to Syntax	91
II. Of Substantives	93
III. Of Adjectives and Adverbs.	98
IV. Of Pronouns	102
V. Of Verbs.	103
VI. Of the Construction of Sentences	113
VII. Of the Contraction or Abbreviation of Sentences	118
VIII. Of the Order of Words	120
IX. Of the Order of Sentences	123
X. Of Punctuation	124

PART III.—THE EXERCISES.

I. Section, referring to Chapters I.—VII.	129
II. Section, referring to Chapters VIII.—XII.	154
III. Section, referring to the Syntax	198
A German-English Vocabulary	215
An English-German Vocabulary.	222



INTRODUCTION.

THE German language has, like every other tongue, raised itself only by degrees to its present beauty and perfection. In the early history of Europe we find warlike races, called the *Teutons* and the *Goths*, occupying that part of the continent which is situated between the rivers Elbe and Rhine. These races, however, were continually harassed and invaded by the Romans, until, in the second and third centuries, they were completely dissolved and dispersed by various eastern nations—migrating at different times and in different ways from the shores of the Caspian and Black Seas to the centre of Europe. It is only from that time that history mentions German Provinces, under the name of “*die Deutschen*.”

However, the language of these amalgamated barbarian races, as well as everything else, shews us their miserable and sensual condition; for, notwithstanding the many wars which they fought with the Romans, and their constant intercourse with the manners and

customs of other nations, they have derived no benefit as regards the cultivation of their language. Thus we find their early writers either cultivating the remains of the Gothic dialect or writing in Latin.

The first and living monuments of the present High German dates only from the beginning of the sixteenth century, or from Martin Luther, who, in reforming the religion of his nation, has certainly reformed its language. The former obscure style gave way to a distinct shape and utterance of thoughts, and Luther's influence was felt in life as well as in literature ; his opinions were received by the people as laws, and his writings prove his great taste. *Grimm*, a competent German critic, says : "The language of Luther, on account of its purity and the powerful influence it had upon his followers, may be regarded as the basis of our modern High German." There can be no doubt that the present German, considering its independence of Greek-Latin, or any other language, and its bold originality, is exceedingly remarkable and interesting ; and it is the elementary study of that language I propose to communicate in this little volume to all those who desire to know it.

A. S. DE W.

PART I.

CONTAINING A COMPLETE AND CONCISE COURSE OF "GRAMMAR,"
DIVIDED INTO "CHAPTERS," "RULES," AND "REMARKS,"
ARRANGED NUMERICALLY.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON PRONUNCIATION.

1. There are NO accents in German.*
2. EVERY letter is pronounced as distinctly in a word as it is pronounced by itself; as, *habe, bin, du, ist, wir, Bruder, diese*.
3. Every vowel followed by two consonants is SHORT; as, *Mutter, besser, Wetter*.
4. Every vowel followed by one consonant is LONG; as, *Feder, Dame, sage, trage, klage, lese*.
5. Pronounce :
 - (A) *ei* and *ai* like the English *i*; as, *Kaiser, mein, dein, sein, kein, rein, nein*.
 - (B) *ie* like the English *e*; as, *die, Spiegel, Friede, wie, Sie, diese, gieb, Sieb*.

* The apostrophe occurs sometimes in poetry or in familiar language, and then it shows the omission of the vowel *e*; as, *hab' ich's*, instead of *habe ich es*; *sind's*, instead of *sind es*; *frag'ich*, instead of *frage ich*.

- (c) *au* like *ow* in vow ; as, *Haus, Glaube, Taube, laut, Kraut, taugen, saugen.*
- (D) *ä* like *a* in hate ; as, *Väter, gäbe, älter, kälter.*
- (E) *o* (no corresponding sound) ; as, *böse, möge, Löwe, öde, hören, schön.*
- (F) *u* like *oo* in fool ; as, *Bruder, Mutter, unser, gut, unter, munter.*
- (G) *ü* like *u* in French ; as, *müde, trübe, über, gütig, Münster, Glück, zurück.*
- (H) *i, j, y* like the English *e* ; as, *in, mit, ja, jeder, Cyprus, Asyl.*
- (I) *c* (before *e* and *i*) and *z* like *tseh* ; as, *Cedar, Citrone, zu, Zahn, zwei, ziehen, zur.*
- (K) *f* and *v* like the English *f* ; as, *Vater, Feder, für, vor, von, vier, voll, fünf.*
- (L) *w* like the English *v* ; as, *wir, werden, wo, was, wer, will, warum, wenn.*
- (M) *s* at the end of a syllable* and before a consonant like a soft *s* ; as, *Stein, Haus, Stock, Maus, hast, bist.*
- (N) *s* before a vowel like the English *z* ; as, *sagen, sein, sind, sie, sollen.*
- (O) *ch* like a strongly aspirated *h* in English ; as, *ich, mich, dich, sich, nicht.*

* Observe that in German writing, and in books printed in German characters, the long *f* is used at the beginning or in the middle of a word ; as *fei, unfer, Käse* ; but at the end of a syllable or a word the short *s* is written : *Haus, Maus, Reis, los, das, aus.*

- (P) *sch* like the English *sh* in shaft ; as, *Fisch, schreiben, Tisch, mischen, Schule.*
- (Q) *ck* like two *k*'s ; as, *Hacke, Rock, Stock, Bock.*
- (R) *tz* like two *z*'s ; as, *Hitze, Mütze, nützen.*
- (S) *sz* like two *s*'s ; as, *grüßen, Hasz, Grusz.*
- (T) *h* at the beginning of a syllable or a word aspirated ; as, *Herr, hin, hier.* In the middle or at the end of a word silent ; as, *ihn, Sohn, Thron, nah.*
- (U) A double vowel very long ; as, *Waldre, Loos, Moos, Seele, Armee.*

6. German nouns* are always written with a capital letter ; as, *Vater, Mutter, Haus, Sohn, Buch, Kind.*

7. Double consonants, such as *bb, dd, ff, gg, ll, mm, nn, pp, rr, ss, tt*, occurring in the middle of a word are divided, and pronounced one with each syllable ; as, *Ebbe, Affe, Halle, Hammer, immer, Sonne, Lippe, lassen, Mutter.*

8. There are in a word as many syllables as there are vowels ; as, *ge-ge-ben, ge-se-hen, ab-ge-sagt, zu-sam-men-ge-setzt.*

9. In a word of several syllables the last one is generally pronounced very softly ; as, *Ge-sund-heit, ge-le-sen, an-ge-nom-men.*

10. In compound words the first syllable has always the accent ; as, *Blu-men-gar-ten, Haus-frau, Ei-sen-bahn.*

* Observe that the pronoun *I (ich)* is never written in German with a capital letter, unless it begins a sentence ; as, *sagte ich? fragte ich? bin ich?*

CHAPTER II.

INTRODUCTION TO GRAMMAR.

RULE 1.—The German language has twenty-nine letters, viz.:—*a, ä, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,*
ah, a, beh, teeh, deh, a, eh, gah, hah, ee,

k, l, m, n, o, ö, p, q, r, s, t, u, ü,
kah, ell, em, en, oh, ooh, peh, koo, err, ess, teh, ooh, ene,
v, w, x, y, z.
eff, veh, ikss, ee, teett.

Of these letters nine are vowels: *a, ä, e, i, o, ö, u, ü, y.*
 The remaining twenty are consonants.

RULE 2.—There are ten parts of speech. Six are variable, viz.: 1, Article; 2, Noun; 3, Adjective; 4, Numeral Adjective; 5, Pronoun; 6, Verb. Four invariable, viz.: 1, Adverb; 2, Preposition; 3, Conjunction; 4, Interjection.

RULE 3.—The German language has :

- (A) Two numbers; the singular and the plural.
- (B) Three persons; the first, the second, and the third.
- (C) Three genders; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.
- (D) Four cases; the nominative, the genitive, the dative, and the accusative; or commonly called in German schools, the first, the second, the third, and the fourth cases. .

CHAPTER III.

OF ARTICLES AND DETERMINATIVE WORDS.

RULE 4.—There are in German two articles; the definite, *der, die, das* (the); and the indefinite, *ein, eine, ein* (a). They agree with the noun to which they belong, in number, gender, and case; and are generally repeated before each noun.¹

The definite article² is declined as follows:

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu. for all Gend.</i>	
N.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	(the)
G.	<i>des</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>des</i>	<i>der</i>	(of the)
D.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>den</i>	(to the)
A.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	(the)

RULE 5.—All demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, such as *dieser*, this; *jener*, that; *jeder*, each; *solcher*, such; *mancher*, many a one, and indefinite numeral adjectives, such as *einer*, the one; *aller*, all;

REMARK 1.—In German, as in English, no article is used with a partitive noun; as, *Wein*, wine; *Obst*, fruit; *Geld*, money; *Bier*, beer; *Öl*, oil; &c., &c.

REMARK 2.—(a) When a noun of quantity, expressing measure, weight, number, &c., &c., is defined by another noun, the preposition of which unites the two nouns in English, is not expressed in German; as, *ein Pfund Kirschen*, a pound of cherries; *eine Flasche Wein*, a bottle of wine; *fünf Ellen Tuch*, five yards of cloth.

(b) The article is left out before proper names, titles, dignities, &c.; as—*Doctor Luther*; *Jakob König von England*; *Herr Steinbach*.

keiner, none ; *etlicher*, a few ; are declined like the definite article, and their declension will appear as follows :

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu. for all Gend.</i>
N.	.....<i>r</i>	.....<i>e</i>	.....<i>s</i>	.....<i>e</i>
G.	.....<i>s</i>	.....<i>er</i>	.....<i>s</i>	.....<i>er</i>
D.	.....<i>m</i>	.....<i>er</i>	.....<i>m</i>	.....<i>en</i>
A.	.....<i>n</i>	.....<i>e</i>	.....<i>s</i>	.....<i>e</i>

Decline all the above and any other determinative adjectives and pronouns.

RULE 6.—The indefinite article is declined :

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	} No Plural.
N.	<i>ein</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	
G.	<i>eines</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>eines</i>	
D.	<i>einem</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>einem</i>	
A.	<i>einen</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	

RULE 7.—All possessive pronouns are declined like the indefinite articles ; and the following table will serve as a guide for their declension :—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu. for all Gend.</i>
N. given		.....<i>e</i>	given	.....<i>e</i>
G.	.....<i>es</i>	.....<i>er</i>	.....<i>es</i>	.....<i>er</i>
D.	.....<i>em</i>	.....<i>er</i>	.....<i>em</i>	.....<i>en</i>
A.	.....<i>en</i>	.....<i>e</i>	like the N.	.....<i>e</i>

Decline*—

<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>	<i>mein</i>	(my).
<i>dein</i>	<i>deine</i>	<i>dein</i>	(thy).
<i>sein</i>	<i>seine</i>	<i>sein</i>	(his).
<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unser</i>	(ours).
<i>euer</i>	<i>eure</i>	<i>euer</i>	(yours).
<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	<i>ihr</i>	(theirs).

* Observe that all these declensions must be done repeatedly and very carefully, so as to prepare the pupil for the declensions of nouns, which, according to all given authorities, form, as it were, a great difficulty for the beginner. The declensions of *all* adjectives and pronouns, and of a *great part* of nouns, will be made very much easier and more comprehensible.

CHAPTER IV.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE 8.—Nouns have in addition to number, gender, and case, two other changes ; viz., the direct formation of feminine nouns from masculine ones, and the formation of diminutives.

RULE 9.—The application of the right gender in German nouns is a matter of considerable difficulty. There can be no fixed rules laid down ; practice, dictionaries, and reading of good books are the only ways to find it out.

REMARK 3.—How to find out the gender of some nouns :—

(a) Of the masculine gender are : Nouns denoting the male sex, names of the Deities, winds, seasons, months, days, and generally those ending in *er* and *en*.

(b) Of the feminine gender are : Nouns denoting the female sex, names of fruits, trees, flowers, and generally those ending in *ei*, *in*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, and *ung*.

(c) Of the neuter gender are : names of metals, countries, towns, letters, all diminutives, nouns ending in *thum* and *sal*, and those having the prefix *ge*.

(d) There are also some nouns that have a different meaning according to the gender they take ; as :

<i>der Band</i> , the volume.	<i>das Band</i> , the ribbon.
<i>der Mensch</i> , the man.	<i>das Mensch</i> , the wench.
<i>der Thor</i> , the fool.	<i>das Thor</i> , the gate.
<i>der Leiter</i> , the guide.	<i>die Leiter</i> , the ladder.
<i>der Bauer</i> , the peasant.	<i>das Bauer</i> , the cage.
<i>der Hut</i> , the hat.	<i>die Hut</i> , the guard.
<i>der See</i> , the lake.	<i>die See</i> , the sea.
<i>der Bund</i> , the league.	<i>das Bund</i> , the bundle, &c., &c.

RULE 10.—There are in German three declensions,* distinguished by the endings of the genitive: the first takes *s* or *es*; the second, *n* or *en*; and the third has no inflection at all.

RULE 11.—The first declension comprises all *neuter* nouns without exception, and all masculine nouns that do not end in *e*.⁴ As a rule this declension takes *s* in the genitive, and has the dative and accusative like the nominative; but if euphony demands it, the *s* may be preceded by an *e*, and in that case the dative retains the *e*. The accusative is always like the nominative.

The following is the model of the first declension:—

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>	
The father.	The friend.	The window.	The house.
N. <i>der Vater</i>	<i>der Freund</i>	<i>das Fenster</i>	<i>das Haus</i>
G. <i>des Vaters</i>	<i>des Freundes</i>	<i>des Fensters</i>	<i>des Hauses</i>
D. <i>dem Vater</i>	<i>dem Freunde</i>	<i>dem Fenster</i>	<i>dem Hause</i>
A. <i>den Vater</i>	<i>den Freund</i>	<i>das Fenster</i>	<i>das Haus</i>

Decline in the same way—

<i>der Bruder</i> , the brother.	<i>das Kind</i> , the child.
<i>der Tisch</i> , the table.	<i>der Himmel</i> , the heaven.
<i>das Messer</i> , the knife.	<i>der Löffel</i> , the spoon.
<i>der Degen</i> , the sword.	<i>der Garten</i> , the garden.
<i>das Pferd</i> , the horse.	<i>der König</i> , the king.
<i>der Arzt</i> , the physician.	<i>das Buch</i> , the book.

REMARK 4.—There are a few nouns ending in *e* that belong by exception to this declension; they take *ns* in the genitive and *n* in the dative and accusative. They are declined as follows:—

N. given	<i>der Glaube</i> , the belief.
G. ....ns	<i>des Glaubens</i> , of the belief.
D. ....n	<i>dem Glauben</i> , to the belief.
A. ....n	<i>den Glauben</i> , the belief.

In this way are declined the following masculine nouns:—*Friede*, peace; *Fünke*, spark; *Gedanke*, thought; *Haufe*, heap; *Name*, name; *Same*, seed; *Wille*, will; *Schade*, damage. *das Herz*, the heart, takes: G. *des Herzens*; D. *dem Herzen*; A. *das Herz*.

* This division into declensions only applies to the singular number.

RULE 12.—The second declension comprises :

(A) All masculine nouns ending in *e*;^s they take *n* in the genitive, and preserve it in the dative, accusative, and in the plural. (See (A) Rule 18).

(B) Masculine nouns derived from foreign languages not ending in *er*^s take *en* in the genitive, and preserve it in the dative, accusative, and in the plural. (See (A) Rule 19).

The following is the model of the second declension :

Genitive in <i>n</i> .	Genitive in <i>en</i> .
The boy.	The student.
N. given <i>der Knabe</i> .	given <i>der Student</i> .
G. <i>n</i> <i>des Knaben</i>.	.....<i>en</i> <i>des Studenten</i> .
D. <i>n</i> <i>dem Knaben</i>.	.....<i>en</i> <i>dem Studenten</i> .
A. <i>n</i> <i>den Knaben</i>.	.....<i>en</i> <i>den Studenten</i> .

Decline in the same way—

<i>der Affe</i> , the ape.	<i>der Bothe</i> , the messenger.
<i>der Riese</i> , the giant.	<i>der Britte</i> , the Briton.
<i>der Löwe</i> , the lion.	<i>der Hase</i> , the hare.
<i>der Jesuit</i> , the Jesuit.	<i>der Adjutant</i> , the adjutant.
<i>der Ungar</i> , the Hungarian.	<i>des Kosack</i> , the Cossack.

RULE 13.—The third declension comprises all feminine nouns without exception, and takes no inflection in the singular.

REMARK 5.—All adjectives used as substantives end in *e*, and consequently belong to this declension. Decline *der Gute*, *der Grose*.

REMARK 6.—The following masculine nouns take *en* by exception: *der Graf*, the count; *der Fürst*, the prince; *der Hirt*, the shepherd; *der Ochs*, the ox; *der Narr*, fool; *der Prinz*, the prince; *der Mensch*, the man; *der Held*, the hero; *der Fels*, the rock; *der Bär*, the bear; *der Ost*, the east; *der West*, the west; *der Nord*, the north; *der Süd*, the south; *der Pfau*, the peacock; *der Mohr*, the negro; *der Herr*, the gentlemen. (We also say *des Herrn* instead of *Herren*.)

The following is the model of the third declension :

N. given	<i>die Stadt</i> , the town.	<i>die Hand</i> , the hand.
G. given	<i>der Stadt</i> , of the town.	<i>der Hand</i> , of the hand.
D. given	<i>der Stadt</i> , to the town.	<i>der Hand</i> , to the hand.
A. given	<i>die Stadt</i> , the town.	<i>die Hand</i> , the hand.

Decline in the same way—

<i>die Mutter</i> , the mother.	<i>die Blume</i> , the flower.
<i>die Uhr</i> , the watch.	<i>die Rose</i> , the rose.

RULE 14.—The plural of German nouns is formed, independent of their gender or their declension, by adding to the singular *e*, *er*, *n*, *en*, and some nouns do not alter the singular.

RULE 15.—The declension of the plural of German nouns is very easy, inasmuch as all the nouns that take *n* or *en* in the nominative plural keep the same endings in the genitive, dative, and accusative; and those that take *e*, *er*, or that remain unaltered (not ending in *n*) only take *n* in the dative, and have the genitive and accusative cases like the nominative.

The following is the declension of the plural of nouns having :

	<i>e</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	Same as the singular.
N.	<i>e</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	given.
G.	<i>e</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	given.
D.	<i>en</i>	<i>ern</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>n</i> .
A.	<i>e</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	given.

RULE 16.—Plural in *e* take :

- (A) All feminine monosyllables.
- (B) Almost all masculine monosyllables.⁷
- (C) Nouns ending in *nisz*, *sal*, *ing*, or *ling*.

REMARK 7.—The following masculine monosyllables take *er* by exception : *Gott*, God ; *Geist*, ghost ; *Ort*, place ; *Leib*, body ; *Mann* man ; *Wald*, forest ; *Wurm*, worm.

Decline in the plural :

<i>der Fusz</i> , the foot.	<i>die Hand</i> , the hand.
<i>der Freund</i> , the friend.	<i>die Stadt</i> , the town.
<i>der Berg</i> , the mountain.	<i>das Verzeichniss</i> , the catalogue.
<i>das Scheusal</i> , the monster.	<i>der Jüngling</i> , the youth.
<i>der Zahn</i> , the tooth.	<i>der König</i> , the king.

RULE 17.—Plural in *er* take :

(A) Almost all neuter monosyllables.⁸

(B) All neuter nouns with the prefix *ge* and not ending in *e*.

(C) All nouns with the affix *thum*.⁹

Decline in the plural :

<i>das Haus</i> , the house.	<i>das Loch</i> , the hole.
<i>das Wort</i> , the word.	<i>der Reichthum</i> , riches.
<i>das Herzogthum</i> , the dukedom.	<i>das Gespenst</i> , the spectre.

RULE 18.—Plural in *n* take :

(A) All nouns of the second declension that take *n* in the genitive singular. (See (A) Rule 12.)

(B) All feminine nouns ending in *e*, *el*, and *er*.¹⁰

Decline—

<i>der Affe</i> , the ape.	<i>der Knabe</i> , the boy.
<i>der Bothe</i> , the messenger.	<i>der Löwe</i> , the lion.
<i>die Nadel</i> , the needle.	<i>die Gabel</i> , the fork.
<i>die Bibel</i> , the Bible.	<i>die Fabel</i> , the fable.

RULE 19.—Plural in *en* take :

(A) All nouns of the second declension that take *en* in the genitive singular. (See (B) Rule 12 ; and Remark 6.)

REMARK 8.—Some neuter monosyllables take *e* by exception, as : *das Fell*, the hide ; *das Thier*, the animal ; *das Haar*, the hair ; *das Pferd*, the horse ; *das Brod*, the bread ; *das Werk*, the work, &c.

REMARK 9.—All these nouns modify in the plural the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

REMARK 10.—*Mutter* and *Tochter*, by exception, do not take *n* in the plural, but soften the radical vowel into *Mütter*, *Töchter*.

(B) All feminine nouns not ending in *e*, *el*, and *er*.¹¹

Decline—

<i>die Art</i> , the art.	<i>die Antwort</i> , the answer.
<i>die Pflicht</i> , the duty.	<i>die Freiheit</i> , the liberty.
<i>die Königin</i> , the queen.	<i>die Fischerei</i> , the fishing.
<i>die Frau</i> , the wife.	<i>die Freundschaft</i> , the friend-
<i>die Beleidigung</i> the offence.	<i>die Zeit</i> , time. [ship.

RULE 20.—The plural like the singular have all masculine and neuter nouns ending in *el*, *er*, *en*, *chen*, *lein* (most of them soften the radical *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*), their genitive and accusative are like the nominative, and only those that end in *el*, and *er*, take *n* in the dative. Decline—

<i>der Bruder</i> , the brother.	<i>der Vater</i> , the father.
<i>der Vogel</i> , the bird.	<i>das Büchlein</i> , the little book.
<i>das Tischlein</i> , the small table.	<i>das Mädchen</i> , the girl.

RULE 21.—Nouns representing measure, weight or quantity remain always singular,¹² although they be preceded by a number, and have in English the plural form. They are—

<i>Dutzend</i> , dozen.	<i>Paar</i> , couple.	<i>Zoll</i> , inch.
<i>Fusz</i> , foot.	<i>Pfund</i> , pound.	<i>Masz</i> , quart.
<i>Schock</i> , score.	<i>Buch</i> , quire.	<i>Laib</i> , loaf.

REMARK 11.—The following masculine and neuter nouns, by exception: *das Bett*, the bed; *das Hemd*, the shirt; *das Ohr*, the ear; *der Sporn*, the spear; *der Strahl*, the ray; *der Unterthan*, the subject; *das Auge*, the eye; *der Nachbar*, the neighbour: *der Pantoffel*, the slipper; *der Stachel*, the sting; *der Stiefel*, the boot; *der Vetter*, the cousin; and all those that take *n* in the genitive. (See Remark 4 of Rule 11.)

REMARK 12.—But *elle*, ell; *Tonne*, ton; *Flasche*, bottle; *Tasse*, cup; *Jahr*, year; *Monat*, month; *Woche*, week; *Tag*, day; *Stunde*, hour; *Minute*, minute; *Sekunde*, second; *Meile*, mile; *Unze*, ounce; take a plural.

RULE 22.—There are nouns that have no plural, as : *die Liebe*, love ; *die Hoffnung*, hope ;¹³ &c. ; and also nouns that have no singular, as : *die Ostern*, Easter ; *die Kosten*, expenses ; &c. (See Remarks 14, 15, and 16.)

REMARK 13.—*Uhr*, signifying time or o'clock ; and *Mann* (men), implying several individuals of a company or a body, do not change in the plural : *drei tausend Mann*, three thousand men ; *drei Mann*, three men ; *vier Uhr*, four o'clock.

REMARK 14.—Nouns that have no plural are :

(a) The greatest part of abstract nouns, as : *die Liebe*, love ; *die Güte*, kindness ; *das Glück*, happiness ; *der Kummer*, the sorrow ; *das Vergnügen*, pleasure. If, of such nouns, a plural be absolutely required, we must express it by a circumlocution ; as *die Beweise der Güte*, the kindnesses ; *die Vergnügungen*, pleasures ; *die Glücksfälle*, fortunes.

(b) Collective nouns, representing substances, or metals, as : *das Fleisch*, the meat ; *das Gold*, the gold ; *das Eisen*, the iron ; &c.

(c) Infinitives and (often) adjectives used as substantives : *das Wissen*, knowing ; *das Lesen*, reading ; *das Gute*, the good ; *das Schöne*, the beautiful.

(d) Nouns of some diseases and illnesses : *das Fieber*, fever ; *die Auszehrung*, consumption ; *das Kopfschmerz*, the headache ; *der Zahnschmerz*, the toothache.

REMARK 15.—Nouns used only in the plural are :

(a) The names of high festivals : *die Ostern*, Easter ; *die Pfingsten*, Pentecost ; *die Fasten*, Lent ; *die Weihnachten*, Christmas.

(b) Such nouns as : *Kosten*, *Unkosten*, expenses ; *Gebrüder*, brothers ; *Einkünfte*, income ; *Ältern*, parents ; *Geschwister*, brothers and sisters ; *Leute*, people ; *die Vorfahren*, ancestors ; *die Beinkleider*, *die Hosen*, the trousers ; *die Truppen*, the troops ; *die Ferien*, holidays, &c.

REMARK 16.—*Mann*, when forming part of a compound substantive, changes into *Leute* : as *Kaufmann*, merchant, *Kaufleute* ; *Zimmermann*, carpenter, *Zimmerleute* ; *Landmann*, countryman, *Landleute*. But national names ending with *mann* take *er* in the plural. *der Musalmann*, the Mussulman, *die Muselmänner*. Likewise, by exception, *der Ehrenmann* the man of honour ; *der Amtmann*, the bailiff ; *der Ehemann*, the husband ; taking *er* in the plural.

RULE 23.—There are some nouns that take a double and even a triple form in the plural, according to their gender and signification ;¹⁷ as—*der Mann*, the man ; *die Leute*, men, people, *Männer*, men (*viri*) ; *die Mannen*, vassals.

RULE 24.—Proper nouns, if declined with the article or any determinative word, do not change in the singular ; in the plural, the masculine ones take *e*, and the feminine ones *n* or *en*.

Declension of proper nouns with the article.

<i>Masculine.</i>			
N. <i>der Friedrich</i>	Frederick		<i>die Friedrichs.</i>
G. <i>des Friedrich</i>	of		<i>der Friedrichs.</i>
D. <i>dem Friedrich</i>	to		<i>den Friedrichen.</i>
A. <i>den Friedrich</i>	.....		<i>die Friedrichs.</i>
<i>Feminine.</i>			
N. <i>die Wilhelmine</i>	Wilhelmina		<i>die Wilhelminen.</i>
G. <i>der Wilhelmine</i>	of		<i>der Wilhelminen.</i>
D. <i>der Wilhelmine</i>	to		<i>den Wilhelminen.</i>
A. <i>die Wilhelmine</i>	.....		<i>die Wilhelminen.</i>

REMARK 17.—The following is a list of such nouns :—

<i>Band</i>	(m.)	tie	<i>Bände</i> ; (n.) volume <i>Bande</i> ; (n.) ribbon <i>Bänder</i> .
<i>Mann</i>	(m.)	man	<i>Männer</i> and <i>Leute</i> ; (m.) vassal <i>Mannen</i> .
<i>Ding</i>	(n.)	thing	<i>Dinge</i> things ; <i>Dinger</i> those things (uncertain).
<i>Land</i>	(n.)	country	<i>Länder</i> countries (single) ; <i>Lande</i> (in general).
<i>Ort</i> ,	(m.)	place	<i>Örter</i> individual places ; <i>Orte</i> general places.
<i>Wort</i>	(n.)	word	<i>Wörter</i> single words ; <i>Worte</i> ideas.
<i>Mensch</i>	(m.)	man	<i>Menschen</i> ; (n.) wench <i>Menscher</i> .
<i>Bank</i>	(f.)	bench	<i>Bänke</i> ; (f.) bank <i>Banken</i> .
<i>Gesicht</i>	(n.)	face	<i>Gesichter</i> ; (n.) vision, <i>Gesichte</i> .
<i>Laden</i>	(m.)	shop	<i>Läden</i> ; (m.) shutter <i>Laden</i> .
<i>Licht</i>	(n.)	candle	<i>Lichte</i> ; (n.) light <i>Lichter</i> .
<i>Mandel</i>	(f.)	almond	<i>Mandeln</i> ; (m.) a set of 15 <i>Mandel</i> .
<i>Schild</i>	(m.)	shield	<i>Schilde</i> ; (n.) sign <i>Schilder</i> .
<i>Stift</i>	(m.)	tack	<i>Stifte</i> ; (n.) institution <i>Stifter</i> .
<i>Thor</i>	(m.)	fool	<i>Thoren</i> ; (n.) gate <i>Thore</i> .

RULE 25.—Proper nouns (not ending in *e*), if declined without the article, take *s* in the genitive,¹⁸ and no inflection in the dative and accusative; and if ending in *e* (chiefly feminine nouns), they take *ns* in the genitive, *n* in the dative, and no inflection in the accusative.

Declension of proper nouns without the article (no plural).¹⁹

Masculine.		Feminine.	
N. Friedrich.	London.	Bertha.	Luise.
G. Friedrich's. ²⁰	London's.	Bertha's.	Luisens.
D. Friedrich.	London.	Bertha.	Luisen.
A. Friedrich.	London.	Bertha.	Luise.

RULE 26.—Every masculine noun admitting of a

REMARK 18.—Some masculine proper nouns take, by exception, *ens* in the genitive, and in that case they preserve the *en* in the dative and accusative, as—N., *Leibnitz*; G., *Leibnitzens*; D., *Leibnitzen*; A., *Leibnitzen*.

REMARK 19.—(a) Proper nouns, derived from Greek and Latin, take, as a rule, *i* in the genitive, thus—*Christus* has the genitive *Christi*; *Cræsus*, genitive *Cræsi*; *Phædro*, genitive *Phædri*, &c.; or else, if their foreign termination can be taken off, then they are declined as shown in Rule 25, *Ovidius* changing into *Ovid*, genitive *Ovid's*; *Carolanus* changing into *Carolan*, genitive *Carolan's*, &c. In high literature the declension of proper nouns, with the exception of the genitive, is avoided as much as possible; euphony is the only guide in applying it.

(b) To avoid disagreeable sounds in the declension of proper nouns they are (when practicable) joined to the common noun that accompanies them and which shews their case; thus we say: *das Leben des Philosophen Kant*; *die Krönung des Königs Johann*, &c., &c.; but if we leave out the article, the proper noun itself must be declined—*Doctor Martin Luther's Schriften*, *König Ludwig's Tod*.

REMARK 20.—The *s* of the genitive, in proper nouns, is always separated by an apostrophe (*'*), to show it to be a termination, and not part of the noun.

feminine, can be transformed into the feminine gender by changing the article and adding *in* to the masculine ;²¹ as—

<i>der Freund</i> , friend.	<i>die Freundin</i> , female friend.
<i>der Schneider</i> , the tailor.	<i>die Schneiderin</i> , the tailor's wife.
<i>der König</i> , the king.	<i>die Königin</i> , the queen.

RULE 27.—To give the noun the diminutive form, the syllables *chen* and *lein* are added to it ; and in most cases the radical vowels *a o u* are softened into *ä ö ü* ;²² as—

der Hund, the dog ; *das Hündchen* ; *das Hündlein*.

RULE 28.—Nouns formed of two or more words are called compound nouns ; they always take the gender of the last component, and are subject to the same rules and remarks as any common noun, thus : *der Hausherr* (the master of the house) is masculine, belongs to the second declension, and takes, according to Remark 6 on Rule 12, *en* in the plural.

REMARK 21.—(a) If the masculine noun ends in *e* or *er* these letters are dropped before adding the *in*, as—*der Löwe*, the lion, *die Löwin* ; *der Zauberer*, the enchanter, *die Zauberin*.

(b) In forming the feminine of a masculine noun the radical vowels *a o u* are usually softened into *ä ö ü*—*der Graf*, the count ; *die Gräfin*.

(c) There are some masculine nouns that form their feminine irregularly, as—*der Vater*, *die Mutter* ; *der Bruder*, *die Schwester* ; *der Neffe*, *die Nichte*, &c.

REMARK 22.—(a) Nouns ending in *e*, *en*, *ie*, usually drop these letters before taking the diminutive endings, as—*die Katze*, the cat, *das Kätzchen* ; *Luise*, *Luischen* ; *der Garten*, the garden, *das Gärtlein*.

(b) *chen* is the first, and *lein* the second degree of diminution ; thus *chen* implies small or little, and *lein* very small or very little. Often the diminutive implies only endearment or ornament, and in that case *chen* means dear or pretty ; and *lein*, dearest or prettiest.

(c) Sometimes, for the sake of euphony, *el* or *er* is inserted between the noun and *chen*, as—*mein Kinderchen*, my dear little child ; *dein Wägelchen*, thy pretty little carriage ; *sein Büchelchen*, his pretty little book.

Find out and prove the gender, the declension, and the plural of the following nouns :—

die Hausfrau, the lady of the house.

das Rathhaus, the townhall.

die Eisenbahn, the railway.

das Dampfboot, the steamboat.

der Regenschirm, the umbrella.

der Fingerhut, the thimble.

CHAPTER V.

OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 29.—An adjective qualifies a noun, always precedes it,²³ and agrees with it in number, gender, and case ; as—

*ein guter Vater ; eine gute Mutter ; ein gutes Kind.*²⁴

REMARK 23.—But if the adjective follows a verb it becomes an adverb, and remains invariable, as—*der Vater ist gut, die Mutter ist gut, das Kind ist gut.*

REMARK 24.—Adjectives are :

(a) Radical, as—*groß*, great ; *klein*, little ; *stark*, strong ; *alt*, old ; *jung*, young ; *fest*, tight.

(b) Derived (from nouns and infinitives), as—*kindisch*, childish ; *menschlich*, human ; *lesbar*, legible ; *golden*, of gold ; *fleissig*, diligent.

(c) Compound (by the union of two words), as—*dunkelgrün*, dark green ; *stockdumm*, very stupid ; *merkwürdig*, curious ; *nachlässig*, careless.

REMARK 25.—Derived adjectives are principally formed by the following affixes : *bar*, *sam*, *en*, *ern*, *ig*, *icht*, *isch*, *lich*, and *haft*.

(a) *bar* implies possibility or inclination, as—*dankbar*, grateful ; *fruchtbar*, fruitful ; *dienstbar*, serviceable ; *sichtbar*, visible ; *furchtbar*, terrible.

(b) *sam* expresses reality, as—*furchtsam*, timid ; *gewaltsam*, violent ; *friedsam*, peaceful ; *heilsam*, salutary ; *ehrsam*, honoured.

RULE 30.—The adjective is declined in three different ways, according to its being preceded—

- (A) By the definite article ;
- (B) By the indefinite article ;
- (C) By no article at all

RULE 31.—If preceded by the definite article, or by any word declined like the definite article (see Rule 5), the adjective takes *e* in the nominative case singular of all the genders, and *en* in all other cases of the singular and plural, except the accusative singular of the feminine and neuter genders, which are *e* like the nominative.

Declension of adjectives preceded by the definite article, &c. :—

MASCULINE	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The good father.	The good fathers.
N. <i>der gute Vater</i>	<i>die guten Väter</i>
G. <i>des guten Vaters</i>	<i>der guten Väter</i>
D. <i>dem guten Vater</i>	<i>den guten Vätern</i>
A. <i>den guten Vater</i>	<i>die guten Väter</i>

(c) *en* and *ern* denote the material of which a thing is made, as—*golden*, of gold ; *linen*, of linen ; *ledern*, of leather ; *kupfern*, of copper.

(d) *ig* shows a quality of a person or thing, as—*gütig*, kind ; *müthig*, courageous ; *steinig*, stony ; *holzig*, woody ; *flüchtig*, diligent ; *müchtig*, mighty.

(e) *icht* points out the similarity in general, as—*steinicht*, like a stone ; *holzicht*, like wood ; *thöricht*, foolish ; *kupfericht*, copperlike.

(f) *ich* shows a similarity to a person, country, place, &c., as—*lutherisch*, Luther-like ; *himmlisch*, heavenly ; *englisch*, English ; *irdisch*, earthly ; *französisch*, French. (Observe that all adjectives derived from proper nouns are written with a small letter.)

(g) *lich* implies likeness or similarity to a person or a thing, as—*süßlich*, sweetish ; *leserlich*, legible ; *kindlich*, childlike ; *freundlich*, friendly ; *künstlerlich*, artistically.

(h) *haft* denotes the propensity or the manner belonging to a person or a thing, as—*fehlerhaft*, faulty ; *gewissenhaft*, conscientious ; *hitzig*, hasty.

FEMININE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The good mother.	The good mothers.
N. <i>die gute Mutter</i>	<i>die guten Mütter</i>
G. <i>der guten Mutter</i>	<i>der guten Mütter</i>
D. <i>der guten Mutter</i>	<i>den guten Müttern</i>
A. <i>die gute Mutter</i>	<i>die guten Mütter</i>

NEUTER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The good child.	The good children.
N. <i>das gute Kind</i>	<i>die guten Kinder</i>
G. <i>des guten Kindes</i>	<i>der guten Kinder</i>
D. <i>dem guten Kinde</i>	<i>den guten Kindern</i>
A. <i>das gute Kind</i>	<i>die guten Kinder</i>

RULE 32.—If preceded by the indefinite article, or by any word declined like the indefinite article (see Rule 7), the adjective takes in nominative singular *er* for the masculine, *e* for the feminine, and *es* for the neuter; all other cases, singular and plural, are *en*, except the accusative singular in the feminine and neuter genders, which is like the nominative.

Declension of adjectives preceded by the indefinite article or possessive pronouns :—²⁶

MASCULINE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
A good father.	Our good fathers.
N. <i>ein guter Vater</i>	<i>unsere guten Väter</i>
G. <i>eines guten Vaters</i>	<i>unserer guten Väter</i>
D. <i>einem guten Vater</i>	<i>unseren guten Vätern</i>
A. <i>einen guten Vater</i>	<i>unsere guten Väter</i>

FEMININE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
A good mother.	Our good mothers.
N. <i>eine gute Mutter</i>	<i>unsere guten Mütter</i>
G. <i>einer guten Mutter</i>	<i>unserer guten Mütter</i>
D. <i>einer guten Mutter</i>	<i>unseren guten Müttern</i>
A. <i>eine gute Mutter</i>	<i>unsere guten Mütter</i>

REMARK 26.—Though the indefinite article has no plural, yet all the possessive articles have a plural.

NEUTER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
A. good child.	My good children.
N. <i>ein gutes Kind.</i>	<i>meine guten Kinder</i>
G. <i>eines guten Kindes</i>	<i>meiner guten Kinder</i>
D. <i>einem guten Kinde</i>	<i>meinen guten Kindern</i>
A. <i>ein gutes Kind</i>	<i>meine guten Kinder</i>

RULE 33.—If not preceded by an article or any other determinative word, the adjective takes the endings of the definite article. (See Rule 5.)

Declension of adjectives not preceded by any other word :—

MASCULINE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Good father.	Good fathers.
N. <i>guter Vater</i>	<i>gute Väter</i>
G. <i>gutes²⁷ Vaters</i>	<i>guter Väter</i>
D. <i>gutem Vater</i>	<i>guten Vätern.</i>
A. <i>guten Vater</i>	<i>gute Väter</i>

FEMININE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Good mother.	Good mothers.
N. <i>gute Mutter</i>	<i>gute Mütter</i>
G. <i>guter Mutter</i>	<i>guter Mütter</i>
D. <i>guter Mutter</i>	<i>guten Müttern</i>
A. <i>gute Mutter</i>	<i>gute Mütter</i>

NEUTER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Good child.	Good children.
N. <i>gutes Kind</i>	<i>gute Kinder</i>
G. <i>gutes²⁷ Kindes</i>	<i>guter Kinder</i>
D. <i>gutem Kinde</i>	<i>guten Kindern</i>
A. <i>gutes Kind.</i>	<i>gute Kinder</i>

REMARK 27.—The *es* of the genitive of the masculine and neuter genders may, if euphony demands it, be changed into *en*; thus, we may say *guten Vaters* and *guten Kindes*.

RULE 34.—To compare an adjective add to the positive *r*,²⁸ or *er* for the comparative, and *st* or *est*²⁹ for the superlative; in both cases soften the radical vowels *a o u* into *ä ö ü*,³⁰ as, *arm, ärmer, der ärmste; klein, kleiner, der kleinste; gross, grösser, der grösste*.³¹

RULE 35.—Comparatives and superlatives are declined in the same way as the adjective in its positive form. (See Rules 31, 32, and 33.)

Decline—

*der beste Vater, ein ärmerer Knabe, unser schöneres Buch,
schönste Blume, ein kleinerer Bruder.*

REMARK 28.—*r* take only adjectives ending in *e*, as—*weise, weiser; nahe, näher; sachte, sachter*; but *er* take all others—*gross, grösser; glücklich, glücklicher*.

REMARK 29.—The *est* is only used for the sake of euphony, instead of *st*, as—*gross, grösserst; heiss, heispest*.

REMARK 30.—The following do not modify the vowels:—

(a) All derived adjectives (see Remark 25) and participles—*dankbar-er, lachend-er, gebogen-er*.

(b) Adjectives having *o* or a double vowel for their radical vowel—*schaal-er, stolz-er*.

(c) The following adjectives—*blasz, pale; sachte, gently; rund, round; bunt, variegated; stumpf, blunt; sanft, gentle; matt, weary; falsch, false; flach, flat; gerade, straight*.

REMARK 31.—Adjectives can also be compared:

(a) By placing before the positive the words *mehr*, more; *minder*,* less; *sehr*, very; *überaus*, above all; *ungemein*, uncommonly; *ausserordentlich*, extraordinarily; *höchst*, most; *zu, allzu*, too; *vorzüglich*, especially, as—*mehr gross als klein*, rather larger than small; *minder klug als reich*, less wise than rich; *sehr reich*, very rich; *ungemein brav*, uncommonly brave.

(b) By prefixing to the positive the syllable *erz* (arch) or some other explicative word, as—*eiskalt*, very cold (cold as ice); *kohl-schwarz*, very black (black as a coal); *schnee-weiss*, very white (white as snow); *erz-dumm*, very stupid (arch stupid).

* Observe that *mehr* and *minder* must be used of necessity where two adjectives or two qualities are compared: *mehr schwarz als braun*, more black than brown; *minder hässlich als unangenehm*, more ugly than disagreeable.

CHAPTER VI.

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

RULE 36.—Numeral adjectives point out the number, quantity, order, classification, or extent of nouns ; they are :—

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Cardinal. ³⁵ | 5. Multiplicative. |
| 2. Ordinal. | 6. Pointing-out kinds. |
| 3. Augmentative. | 7. Bisecting. |
| 4. Fractional. | 8. Indefinite. |

(c) By using *so* or *ebenso* (as) before the positive, and *wie* or *als* (as) after it—*er ist ebenso reich wie sein Bruder*, he is as rich as his brother.

(d) By placing before the comparative the words *viel*, much ; *weit*, far ; *noch*, still ; *wenig*, less ; *ungleich*, unlike ; *bei weitem*, by far ; as—*er ist weit gelehrter als sein Bruder*, he is far more learned than his brother ; *Sie sind bei weitem reicher als er*, you are by far richer than he ; *er ist viel unglücklicher als sein Bruder*, he is much more unhappy than his brother.

(e) By prefixing to the superlative the words *aller*, *am*, *auf*, *zum*, *im*, as—*allerliebster*, dearest ; *auf das schönste*, most beautifully ; *im mindesten*, in the least ; *am meisten*, the most ; *zum besten*, for the best.

REMARK 32.—With some adjectives only the superlative is used :

<i>äussere, äusserste</i> ; (outward)	<i>hintere, hinterste</i> ; (behind)
<i>innere, innerste</i> ; (inward)	<i>obere, oberste</i> ; (upper)
<i>vordere, vorderste</i> ; (fore)	<i>untere, unterste</i> ; (under)

REMARK 33.—Some adjectives are irregularly compared ; they are—high, *hoch, höher, höchst* ; near, *nahe, näher, nächst* ; much, *viel, mehr, meist* ; soon, *bald, eher, ehest* ; good, *gut, besser, best*.

REMARK 34.—Use, to express :—

size : <i>klein, kleiner, kleinste</i> ,	} for small } or little.
value : <i>gering, geringer, geringste</i> ,	
character : <i>schlecht, schlechter, schlechtest</i> ,	} for bad.
a consequence : <i>schlimm, schlimmer, schlimmste</i> ,	

REMARK 35.—Some cardinal numbers are used as substantives ; *zwei* and *drei* take *er* in the genitive, and the others take *e* or *en* in the plural ; as—*zweier Knaben*, of two boys ; *von sechsen*, out of six ; *die*

RULE 37.—The cardinal numbers are invariable ; they are :

1. <i>eins.</i> ³⁶	11. <i>elf.</i>	21. <i>ein und zwanzig.</i>
2. <i>zwei.</i> ³⁷	12. <i>zwoölf.</i>	22. <i>zwei und zwanzig.</i>
3. <i>drei.</i>	13. <i>dreizehn.</i>	23. <i>drei und zwanzig, &c., &c.</i>
4. <i>vier.</i>	14. <i>vierzehn.</i>	25. <i>fünf und zwanzig, &c., &c.</i>
5. <i>fünf.</i>	15. <i>fünfzehn.</i>	30. <i>dreissig, &c., &c.</i>
6. <i>sechs.</i>	16. <i>sechzehn.</i>	40. <i>vierzig, &c, &c.</i>
7. <i>sieben.</i>	17. <i>siebenzehn.</i>	50. <i>fünfzig, &c, &c.</i>
8. <i>acht.</i>	18. <i>achtzehn.</i>	60. <i>sechzig, &c, &c.</i>
9. <i>neun.</i>	19. <i>neunzehn.</i>	70. <i>siebenzig, &c., &c.</i>
10. <i>zehn.</i>	20. <i>zwanzig.</i>	80. <i>achtzig, &c., &c.</i>
90. <i>neunzig, &c., &c.</i>		200. <i>zwei hundert.</i>
100. <i>hundert.</i>		900. <i>neun hundert.</i>
101. <i>hundert und eins.</i>		1,000. <i>tausend.</i>
199. <i>hundert und neun und neunzig.</i>		1,000,000. <i>eine Million.</i> ³⁸

RULE 38.—Ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal ones by adding *te* up to nineteen and *ste* from

Hunderte, the hundreds; *die Tausende*, the thousands; *mit Vieren fahren*, to drive four horses; *alle Neune werfen*, to throw all nine (at ninepins).

REMARK 36.—The number *eins* (an unit) expresses only an indefinite object, and remains invariable; but it changes into *ein, eine*, when placed before a noun, and is the indefinite article (see Rule 6); if preceded by the definite article it is declined like the adjective, according to Rule 31; if followed immediately by a possessive pronoun or used by itself (implying only one) it takes the endings of the definite article, and becomes an indefinite pronoun. (See Rule 53.)

Decline—(a) *ein Hund*, a dog; *eine Katze*, a cat; *ein Buch*, a book.

(b) *der eine, die eine, das eine*, the one.

(c) *einer, eine, eines*, only one.

REMARK 37.—Instead of *zwei* the Germans use *beide* (both) to represent two inseparable persons or things; as—*beide Augen*, both eyes; *beide Herren sind hier gewesen*, both (the two) gentlemen were here. *Beide* is declined like an adjective in the plural.

REMARK 38.—If cardinal numbers are united to nouns expressing part of a whole, those nouns remain in the singular, although there is a plural in the English; as—*drei Pfund*, three pounds; *sechs Fuss*, six feet; *hundert Mann stark*, consisting of one hundred men.

twenty upwards. *Der erste* (the first) is an exception. *Der letzte* (the last) also belongs to them.³⁹ They are all declined like the adjectives. (See Rules 31, 32.⁴⁰)

Write out the ordinal numbers up to 100 and decline—

der erste, der zwanzigste, der dritte, der letzte, der hundertste.

RULE 39.—To form augmentative numbers add *fach* or *fältig* to cardinal ones; as—*einfach*, simple; *dreifältig*, threefold; *sechsfach*, sixfold, &c., &c.

Write out the augmentative numbers up to 15.

RULE 40.—To form fractional numbers add *tel* to cardinal ones up to nineteen and *stel* from twenty upwards (*halb* $\frac{1}{2}$, *drittel* $\frac{1}{3}$, excepted),⁴¹ ⁴² as—*viertel* $\frac{1}{4}$, *fünftel* $\frac{1}{5}$, &c., &c.

Write out the fractional numbers up to 25.

REMARK 39.—THE FIRST and THE LAST is translated by *der erste* and *der letzte* when following the verb to be; as—*ich war der erste du bist der letzte*; in every other case it is rendered by *zuerst* and *zuletzt*; as—*er kam zuerst*, he came first; *sie ging zuletzt*, she went last.

REMARK 40.—(a) When indicating the order of a prince the ordinal number is written with a capital letter, and follows the noun, it is always preceded by the definite article and is declined, whereas the proper noun remains invariable; as—*Wilhelm der Vierte, Ludwig der Vierzehnte*. Decline them.

(b) To express dates the ordinal number is placed before the month, and agrees with it in case: *der sechste Mai*, the 6th of May; *den sechsten Mai*, on the 6th of May. (Observe that the *of* preceding the month is not translated, but the numeral is put in the accusative case.)

REMARK 41.—The twelve hours of the day are expressed by the cardinal numbers themselves, or with *Uhr*, which is always invariable (instead of *zwölf Uhr*, we may say: *Mittag* for noon, and *Mitternacht* for midnight). The half-hours, quarter hours, and minutes are expressed: *halb eins*, $\frac{1}{2}$ past 12; *halb zwei*, $\frac{1}{2}$ past 1; &c., &c.; *ein Viertel auf drei*, $\frac{1}{4}$ past 2; *ein Viertel auf fünf*, $\frac{1}{4}$ past 4; *drei Viertel auf drei*, $\frac{3}{4}$ to 3; *drei Viertel auf fünf*, $\frac{3}{4}$ to 5; *zehn Minuten nach fünf*, 10 minutes past 5; *zehn Minuten vor sechs*, 10 minutes to 6, &c., &c.

RULE 41.—Multiplicative numbers are formed from cardinal ones by the addition of *mal* ; as—*einmal*, once ; *zweimal*, twice ; *dreimal*, thrice ; &c., &c.

Write out the multiplicative numbers up to 15.

RULE 42.—Numbers pointing out kinds are formed by adding *erlei* to cardinal numbers ; as—*einerlei*, of one kind ; *zweierlei*, of two kinds ; &c., &c.

Write out the numbers pointing out the kind up to 20.

RULE 43.—Bisecting numbers up to ten are formed by adding *halb* to ordinal ones ; as—*ein halb*, $\frac{1}{2}$; *anderthalb*, $1\frac{1}{2}$; *drittehalb*, $2\frac{1}{2}$; *vierttehalb*, $3\frac{1}{2}$; but from ten it is better to say, *zehn und ein halb*, $10\frac{1}{2}$; *elf und ein halb*, $11\frac{1}{2}$.

Write out bisecting numbers up to 15.

44.—Indefinite numerals, or rather indefinite adjectives, are either used with nouns or by themselves, (that is instead of nouns) they are : *viele*, many ; *wenige*, few ; *mehrere*,⁴³ several ; *manche*, many a one ; *beides*, both ; *andere*, others ; *einige*, some ; *etliche*, a few ;

REMARK 42.—The division of time is expressed by *das Jahrhundert*, the century ; *das Jahr*, the year ; *ein halbes Jahr*, half a year ; *ein Viertel Jahr*, three months ; *drei Viertel Jahr*, three quarters ; *fünf Viertel Jahr*, a year and a quarter ; *ein Monat*, a month ; *eine Woche* or *acht Tage*, a week ; *vierzehn Tage* or *zwei Wochen*, a fortnight ; *ein Tag*, a day ; *eine Stunde*, an hour ; *eine halbe Stunde*, half an hour ; *eine Viertel Stunde*, a quarter of an hour ; *eine Minute*, a minute ; *eine Sekunde*, a second. They are all nouns, and consequently they are all declined and take a plural.

REMARK 43.—*Kein*, *viel*, *mehr*, *wenig*, used as adverbs or with collective nouns, are invariable ; as—*wenig Wein*, a little wine ; *viel Geld*, much money ; *wenig Ehre*, little honour.

jeder, every; *aller-e-es*, all the (the whole); *sämtliche*, all the (collectively); *kein*, none; *gariszer*, certain. They are declined like the article; see Rule 5.

Decline all the indefinite adjectives, and in both numbers; if you cannot do it, state why. (See Remark 44.)

CHAPTER VII.

OF PRONOUNS.

RULE 45.—There are six kinds of pronouns in German :

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| (A) Personal. | (D) Demonstrative. |
| (B) Interrogative. | (E) Relative. |
| (C) Possessive. | (F) Indefinite. |

RULE 46.—The personal pronouns are eight in number :⁴⁵

Sing.	{	<i>ich</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>	Plu.	{	<i>wir</i>	<i>ihr, Sie</i>	<i>sie</i>
		I	thou	he	she	it			we	you	they

REMARK 44.—(a) When *Aller-e-es* is used before a demonstrative pronoun it generally drops the *er, e, or es*; as—*All dies Geschrei*, all this noise; *all dies Geld*, all this money.

(b) *Alles*, used in the neuter, means everybody or everything; *alles hasst ihn*, everybody hates him; *alles ist verloren*, all is lost.

(c) ALL THE, in the sense of THE WHOLE OF, is also rendered by *ganz*; as—*die ganze Familie*, the whole family; *das ganze Dorf*, the whole village. *Ganz*, the whole, and also *halb*, half, before towns and countries, do not change; as—*ganz Bury, halb Manchester*.

REMARK 45.—(a) *Selbst* or *selber* (self) is often added to personal pronouns to express myself, thyself, &c., &c., as—*ich selbst, du selber, er selbst, &c., &c.*

They are declined as follows :—

	First Person. I.	Second Person. Thou.	Third Person. He. She. It.		
Singular.	N. <i>ich</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>
	G. <i>meiner</i>	<i>deiner</i>	<i>seiner</i>	<i>ihrer</i>	<i>seiner⁴⁶</i>
	D. <i>mir</i>	<i>dir</i>	<i>ihm, sich</i>	<i>ihr, sich</i>	<i>ihm, sich</i>
	A. <i>mich</i>	<i>dich</i>	<i>ihn, sich</i>	<i>sie, sich</i>	<i>es, sich</i>
Plural.	N. <i>wir</i>	<i>ihr, (Sie)</i>	<i>sie</i>		
	G. <i>unser</i>	<i>euer, (Ihrer)</i>	<i>ihrer</i>		
	D. <i>uns</i>	<i>euch, (Ihnen, sich)</i>	<i>ihnen</i>		
	A. <i>uns</i>	<i>euch, (Sie, sich)</i>	<i>sie, sich⁴⁷</i>		

RULE 47.—The interrogative pronouns are :—

(A) *Welcher, welche, welches* which or what, declined like the definite article. (See Rule 4.)

(b) *Du* (thou) and *ihr* (you) are only used in addressing Supreme Beings, beloved objects, and in poetry; *du* used to be addressed to people of inferior rank, or in contempt, but now-a-days we seldom use it, unless we wish to express particularly our attachment or respect, our hatred or enmity, and generally our disposition towards our fellows. The simple pronoun *du* can express an infinity of feeling and sentiment.

(c) *Sie*, with a capital *S*, is used for addressing anyone, and then the verb is put into the third person plural. But observe that *ihr* must be used to express plurality.

REMARK 46.—(a) Instead of *meiner, deiner, seiner*, familiar conversation will admit of *mein, dein, sein*; as—*Vergiesz mein nicht*, forget me not; *gedenke mein*, think of me.

(b) The genitives *meiner, deiner, seiner*, are often contracted with the preposition *willen* (for the sake of); *halben* or *wegen* (on account of); and then they change the final *r* into *t*; as—*meinethwillen*, for my sake; *deinethalben*, on thy account; *seinethwegen*, on his account.

REMARK 47.—*Sich* is the reflective form of the personal pronoun used for the conjugation of reflective verbs, as—*er liebt sich*.

REMARK 48.—If two pronouns—such as *ich* and *du*, *ich* and *er*, *du* and *er*—are used, they must be followed by the copulative *wir* or *ihr*, and have the verb in the plural; as—*ich und du, wir haben gute Ältern*; *du und er, ihr seid die Unglücklichsten*.

(B) *Wer* ? who ? G. *wessen* ? whose ? D. *wem* ? to whom ? A. *wen* ? whom ?

(C) *Was* ? what ? G. *wessen* ? of what or whose ? No Dative. A. *was* ? what ?

They are all used to ask questions—*wer* for persons, *was* for things, and *welcher-e-es* for both persons⁴⁹ and things. The latter is also frequently used with a noun, and then it agrees with it in number, gender, and case.

EXAMPLES.

Who has been here ?	<i>Wer ist hier gewesen ?</i>
What have you done ?	<i>Was haben Sie gemacht ?</i>
Which book ?	<i>Welches Buch ?</i>
Which boys ?	<i>Welche Knaben ?</i>
I have seen one of these ladies.	<i>Ich habe eine von diesen Damen</i>
Which ?	<i>gesehen. Welche ?</i>
I have bought one of these	<i>Ich habe eins von diesen Büchern</i>
books. Which ?	<i>gekauft. Welches ?</i>

REMARK 49.—Instead of *welcher-e-es* we often use *was für ein* in the singular, and *was für* in the plural, and then it answers to the English WHAT A, or WHAT SORT OR KIND OF; as—

What sort of man is your brother ? *Was für ein Mann ist Ihr Bruder ?*
 What sort of apples ? *Was für Äpfel ?*

But if *was für ein* be used without a noun the *ein* changes into *einer-e-es*; as—

What a one ? (Nom. mas.)	<i>Was für einer ?</i>
What a one ? (Acc. mas.)	<i>Was für einen ?</i>
What a one ? (fem.)	<i>Was für eine ?</i>
What sort of a one ? (neuter, for things only.)	<i>Was für eins ?</i>

In exclamation the WHAT A is translated by *welch ein, eine, ein*, for the singular and *welch* for the plural.

What a boy !	<i>Welch ein Knabe !</i>
What a woman !	<i>Welch ein Weib !</i>
What nonsense !	<i>Welch eine Dummheit !</i>
What bad apples !	<i>Welch schlechte Äpfel !</i>

RULE 48.—Possessive pronouns are either conjunctive or disjunctive.⁵⁰ Conjunctive ; as—

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu. for all Gen.</i>	
<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>	<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>	(my)
<i>dein</i>	<i>deine</i>	<i>dein</i>	<i>deine</i>	(thy)
<i>sein</i>	<i>seine</i>	<i>sein</i>	<i>seine</i>	(his, its)
<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	(her)
<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>	(our)
<i>euer</i>	<i>eure</i>	<i>euer</i>	<i>eure</i>	} (your)
<i>Ihr</i>	<i>Ihre</i>	<i>Ihr</i>	<i>Ihre</i>	
<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	

They precede the noun, agree with it in number, gender, and case, and are declined like the indefinite article. (See Rule 6.)

Disjunctive ; as—⁵⁰

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu. for all Gen.</i>	
<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>meinige,</i>	<i>die meinigen,</i>	(mine)
"	"	"	<i>deinige,</i>	" <i>deinigen,</i>	(thine)
"	"	"	<i>seinige,</i>	" <i>seinigen,</i>	(his, its, theirs)
"	"	"	<i>ihrige,</i>	" <i>ihrigen,</i>	(hers)
"	"	"	<i>unsrige,</i>	" <i>unsrigen,</i>	(ours)
"	"	"	<i>eurige,</i>	" <i>eurigen,</i>	} (yours)
"	"	"	<i>Ihrige,</i>	" <i>Ihrigen,</i>	
"	"	"	<i>ihrige,</i>	" <i>ihrigen,</i>	

They always stand instead of nouns, agree with them in number and gender, and are declined as adjectives preceded by the definite article. (See Rule 31.) They are often used as actual nouns, and then they are written with a Capital letter.

REMARK 50.—(a) Observe that *der, die, das meine, deine, seine* ; &c., &c., are only an abbreviation of *der, die, das meinige* ; &c., &c. But instead of *der, die, das meinige* ; &c., &c., we may use *meiner, deiner, seiner* ; &c., &c., and decline them like the definite article. (See Rule 4.)

(b) *Meiner, deiner, seiner* are often contracted with the preposition *wegen* (on account of), and in that case the final *r* is changed into *t* ; as—*meinertwegen*, on my account ; *deinertwegen*, on thy account ; *seinertwegen*, on his account.

RULE 49.—A demonstrative pronoun either precedes a noun and becomes a mere adjective,—as *dieser Herr, dieses Buch, jene Frau*—or it represents the noun and points it out, *dieser ist reich, jener ist arm*.

RULE 50.—Demonstrative pronouns joined to a noun always precede it, agree with it in number and gender, and are repeated before each noun. They are all declined like the definite article ; and they are :—

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Plu. of all Gen.	
(A) <i>dieser</i>	<i>diese</i>	<i>dieses</i>	<i>diese</i>	(this, these)
<i>jener</i>	<i>jene</i>	<i>jenes</i>	<i>jene</i>	(that, those)
<i>solcher</i>	<i>solche</i>	<i>solches</i>	<i>solche</i>	(such) ⁵¹
<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	(this, these)
(B) <i>derselbe</i>	<i>dieselbe</i>	<i>dasselbe</i>	<i>dieselben</i>	} (the same)
<i>der nämliche</i>	<i>die nämliche</i>	<i>das nämliche</i>	<i>die nämlichen</i>	
<i>derjenige</i>	<i>diejenige</i>	<i>derjenige</i>	<i>diejenigen</i>	
				(he, she, that)

They are declined like the adjective preceded by the definite article ; the article following its own declension, and *jenige, nämliche, selbe*, that of the adjective. (See Rule 31.)

RULE 51.—All the above adjective pronouns can be used by themselves, that is instead of nouns, and then they agree with the noun they represent in number and gender,⁵² and are all declined as explained

REMARK 51.—*Solcher-e-es* is generally preceded in the singular by *ein, eine, ein* ; as—*ein solcher Herr*, such a gentleman ; *eine solche Dame*, such a lady. But if it be followed by *ein* or an adjective, it remains invariable, and drops the *-e-es* ; as—*solch ein Herz*, such a heart ; *solch gute Leute*, such good people.

REMARK 52.—On the use of *dieser, jener, dies, das, dessen*, &c.:

(a) *dieser* relates to nearest objects, *jener* to the furthest ; as *dieser Mann*, this man ; *jener Herr*, that gentleman ; *diese Feder*, this pen ; *jenes Papier*, that paper.

in Rule 50 ; but *der*, *die*, *das*, if implying *this* or *that*, are declined as follows :—

Mas. This, that, or he.	Fem. This, that, or she.	Neut. That or it.	Plu. for all Gen. These or those.
N. <i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>
G. <i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>derer</i>
D. <i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>
A. <i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>

(b) *dieses*, meaning the indefinite neuter expression *that*, *it*, *these*, or *those*, is often contracted into *dies* or *das*, and sometimes even replaced by *es* for both numbers and all genders ; as—

These are Englishmen.	<i>Das sind Engländer.</i>
That is Mrs. Cobbett.	<i>Das ist Frau Cobbett.</i>
It is I.	<i>Das bin ich.</i>
That is iron, or it is iron.	<i>Es ist Eisen.</i>
Is it you ?	<i>Sind Sie das ?</i>
Is that your house ?	<i>Ist dies Ihr Haus ?</i>

(c) But *that*, used without a noun, must be always translated by *das*, and is invariable ; as—

That is a pen.	<i>Das ist eine Feder.</i>
That is a lady.	<i>Das ist eine Dame.</i>

But if it be used in opposition to *dieses*, or *das hier* (this), it is rendered by *jenes*, or *das da* ; as—

Give me this and that.	<i>Geben Sie mir dies hier und das da (dieses und jenes).</i>
This is for me and that for you.	<i>Dieses ist für mich und jenes ist für Sie.</i>

(d) *Of it* or *of them* taken in a partitive sense is rendered by *dessen* (m. and n.) and *deren* (fem. and plu.) ; as—

Have you brothers ?	<i>Haben Sie Brüder ?</i>
Yes, I have six (of them).	<i>Ja, ich habe deren sechs.</i>
Have you any paper ?	<i>Haben Sie Papier ?</i>
I have enough (of it).	<i>Ich habe dessen genug.</i>

But replace *dessen* and *deren* by *davon*, to avoid repetition ; as—

I have bought some apples.	<i>Ich habe Äpfel gekauft.</i>
Three of them I gave to him.	<i>Drei davon gab ich ihm.</i>

RULE 52.—A relative pronoun refers to a preceding noun or pronoun (called its antecedent) and serves to connect two sentences together.⁵³ They are :—

(A) Declinable.

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Plu. for all Gen.	
N. <i>welcher</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>	<i>welche</i>	(who, which)
G. <i>dessen</i> ⁵⁴	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	(whose, of whom)
D. <i>welchem</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welchem</i>	<i>welchen</i>	(to whom)
A. <i>welchen</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>	<i>welche</i>	(whom, which, some)

EXAMPLES.

1. The boy I see. *Der Knabe welchen ich sehe.*
2. The boy whose book you have. *Der Knabe dessen Buch Sie haben.*
3. The book we read. *Das Buch welches wir lesen.*
4. Have you any friends? *Haben Sie Freunde?* Ja, ich habe welche.
5. Have you any wine? Yes, I have some. *Haben Sie Wein?* Ja, ich habe welchen.
6. Has she any money? Yes, she has some. *Hat sie Geld?* Ja, sie hat welches.

(e) The adverb *eben* added to demonstrative pronouns points out very particularly a noun; as—

The very same gentleman. *Eben derselbe Herr.*
 This very book. *Eben dieses Buch.*

(f) There are some compound adverbs formed from the genitive *dessen* and *deren* (contracted into *desz* and *derz*) with various nouns and adjectives; as—

dergleichen, such like. *deszfalls*, for that reason.
dereinst, once. *deszgleichen*, the like of which.
dergestalt, in such a way. *deszhalb*, therefore.

REMARK 53.—Relative pronouns are always expressed in German, and they require the verb at the end of a sentence: as—

The money he has. *Das Geld welches er besitzt.*

REMARK 54.—The noun that follows the genitive *dessen* and *deren* takes no article; as—*der Knabe dessen Bücher hier sind.*

(B) Declinable. *Der, die, das* ; PL, *die*, (who or which). They are declined like the demonstrative pronoun, *der, die, das* (see Rule 50) with the exception of the genitive plural, which is *deren*, and not *derer*. (Decline them.)

EXAMPLES.

1. The bird you see. *Der Vogel den Sie sehen.*
2. The father we love. *Der Vater den wir lieben.*
3. The master whom we obey. *Der Lehrer dem wir gehorchen.*

(c) Declinable. *Wer* has no gender and no plural. N. *wer*, he who ; G. *wessen*, he whose ; D. *wem*, he to whom ; A. *wen*, he whom. This pronoun generally begins a sentence, and stands instead of *derjenige welcher*, he who ; as—

He who is contented is rich. *Wer reich ist, ist zufrieden.*

He who is not for me is against me. *Wer nicht für mich ist, ist gegen mich.*

(d) Indeclinable. *Was*, what.⁵⁵ It never refers to a noun but to something in general that has been said and done ; it is always the object of the sentence ; as—

What I have. *Was ich habe.*

What is beautiful is not always useful. *Was schön ist, ist nicht immer nützlich.*

That is what he said. *Das ist's was er sagte.*

RULE 53.—An indefinite pronoun represents a noun

REMARK 55.—There is also another invariable pronoun, which is *so* (who or which), occurring sometimes in poetry to avoid the repetition of *der, die das* ; as—*Hier schläft Röschen, so der Mutter Freude, so der Stolz des Dorfes war.* Here lies Rosa, who was the joy of the mother, the pride of the village.

in an indefinite and general manner; they are⁵³—*man*, one, they, people; *jemand*, somebody, someone; *jeder-mann*, everybody; *niemand*, nobody, no one; *einer*, *irgendeiner*, one, anyone, any; *etwas*, something; *nichts*, nothing; *es*, it, that, they; *selbst*, self; even; *einander*, each other; *der eine und der andere*, *beide*, both; *keiner*, no, none, no one.

RULE 54.—There are in German certain pronominal locutions, composed of adverbs and prepositions. In Remark 57 will be found a list of them as a reference for the exercises. Practice and reading of good authors are the only guide for their proper application.

REMARK 56.—*Man*, *etwas*, *nichts*, *einander*, *es*, and *selbst* are invariable; *einer* and *keiner* are declined like the definite article; *jemand* and *niemand* take *es* in the genitive and do not change in the dative and accusative.

REMARK 57.—The following are the pronominal locations most in use:—

<i>da</i> , <i>dort</i> , there.	<i>wo</i> , where.
<i>darin</i> , therein, in it.	<i>worin</i> , wherein, in what.
<i>daselbst</i> , there, in that place.	<i>woselbst</i> , even where.
<i>daran</i> , thereat, by it, at it.	<i>woran</i> , whereon, that by.
<i>dabei</i> , thereby, by it.	<i>wobei</i> , whereby, by which.
<i>darauf</i> , upon that, on it.	<i>worauf</i> , whereupon, on which.
<i>dazu</i> , thereto, for that.	<i>wozu</i> , whereat, for what.
<i>dahin</i> , thither, to it.	<i>wohin</i> , whither, what way.
<i>daher</i> , thence, from there.	<i>woher</i> , whence, from what place.
<i>daraus</i> , from thence.	<i>woraus</i> , from what, whence.
<i>darüber</i> , over it, about that.	<i>worüber</i> , whereat, at what.
<i>dafür</i> , for that.	<i>wofür</i> , wherefore, for what.
<i>darum</i> , therefore, for that reason.	<i>worum</i> , about what.
<i>damit</i> , therewith, with it.	<i>womit</i> , wherewith, by which.
<i>davon</i> , thereof, of it, from that.	<i>wovon</i> , whereof, of what.
<i>darein</i> , into it.	<i>worein</i> , where into, into what.
<i>danach</i> , after it, for it.	<i>wonach</i> , whereupon, after which.
<i>dadurch</i> , by it, through that	<i>wodurch</i> , whereby, by which.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON VERBS.

RULE 55.—There are in German six kinds of verbs :

1. The auxiliary verbs : *haben, sein, werden.*
2. Transitive verbs, active voice : *ich lobe.*
3. Transitive verbs, passive voice : *ich werde gelobt.*
4. Neuter verbs, as : *ich bin, ich reite, ich sitze.*
5. Reflective verbs : *sich befinden, sich freuen.*
6. Impersonal verbs : *es regnet, es donnert.*

RULE 56.—Verbs are also :

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| (A) Regular. | (c) Compound separable. |
| (B) Irregular. | (d) Compound inseparable. |

RULE 57.—The infinitive of all German verbs ends in *en* or *n*.⁵⁸ By cutting off this termination we obtain the root of a verb, and by adding to it certain other endings we can conjugate all the simple tenses of every German verb.

Find out the root of *loben, singen, thun, wollen, tadeln, pflanzen, tanzen, handeln.*

RULE 58.—German verbs are subject to the following changes :—

- (A) Four moods : 1. The indicative ; 2. the subjunctive ; 3. the imperative ; 4. the infinitive.⁵⁹

REMARK 58.—In verbs that end in the infinitive in *n* the *e* is omitted by elision, thus—*tadeln, thun, wechseln*, stand instead of *tadelen, thuen, wechelen*.

REMARK 59.—The conditional mood of foreign languages is translated in German either by the imperfect of the subjunctive (if

(B) Six tenses (two simple) : 1. The present ; 2. the imperfect ;⁶⁰ (four compound⁶¹) : 3. the perfect ; 4. the pluperfect ; 5. the future ; 6. the past future.

(c) Two participles : The present and the past.⁶²

(D) Two numbers : The singular and the plural.

(E) Three persons : The first, the second, and the third.

RULE 59.—The present participle is formed by adding *end* to the root, as—*lobend*, *tadelnd*, *thuend*, *singend*.

RULE 60.—The past participle is formed by prefixing to the root the syllable *ge* and adding to it *t*,⁶³ as—*gelobt*, *getadelt*, *gekauft*.

practicable), or by a circumlocution made of the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *werden* and the present or past infinitive of the required verb; thus we would use—

For the present conditional.

I would praise.

Sing. *ich würde loben.*

du würdest loben.

er würde loben.

Plu. *wir würden loben.*

ihr würdet loben.

sie würden loben.

For the past conditional.

I would have praised.

ich würde gelobt haben.

du würdest gelobt haben.

er würde gelobt haben.

wir würden gelobt haben.

ihr würdet gelobt haben.

sie würden gelobt haben.

REMARK 60.—Observe that the three different ways of expressing in English the present and the imperfect tenses are always rendered in German in one form, thus:

I love, I do love, or I am loving, is—*ich liebe.*

I loved, I was loving, or I did love, is—*ich liebte.*

REMARK 61.—Only two out of the four compound tenses are composed with the past participle, viz.,—the perfect and pluperfect. The future and past future tenses are composed, as in English, with the infinitive.

REMARK 62.—The participles are often used as adjectives, and then they agree with the noun to which they belong in number, gender, and case. (See Rule 29.)

REMARK 63.—In the greater part of irregular verbs the past participle ends in *en*. (See Rule 66.)

RULE 61.—There are three auxiliary or helping verbs, viz.,—*haben*, to have; *sein*, to be; and *werden*, to be.⁶⁵⁻⁶⁶

REMARK 64.—There are, however, verbs, which do not take the initials *ge* in the past participle, they are:—

(a) All verbs that have the foreign termination *iren* or *ieren*, as—*regieren*, to govern, *regiert*; *addiren*, to add, *addirt*; *spazieren*, to walk, *spaziert*, &c.

(b) Derived verbs, which begin by one of the particles *be*, *ge*, *ent*, *emp*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*; as—*besuchen*, to visit, *besucht*; *erlangen*, to attain, *erlangt*; *verweilen*, to stay, *verweilt*; *zerstören*, to destroy, *zerstört*.

(c) Inseparable compound verbs, as—*vollenden*, to accomplish, *vollendet*; *unterrichten*, to instruct, *unterrichtet*; *übersetzen*, to translate, *übersetzt*. But in separable compound verbs the particle *ge* is placed between the verb and its compound, as—*anklagen*, to accuse, *angeklagt*; *abkürzen*, to shorten, *abgekürzt*; *fortjagen*, to send away, *fortgejagt*.

REMARK 65.—These three verbs are also used by themselves, and then *haben* is an active verb, signifying to have; *sein* (to be), an intransitive verb, expressing a state or being; *werden*, also an intransitive verb, signifying to become; their conjugation is in both cases alike, with the exception of *werden*, which, used as an auxiliary, has in the past participle *worden* (been), and as an intransitive verb, *geworden* (become).

REMARK 66.—The auxiliary verbs are used:—

haben to conjugate (a) All active or transitive verbs.

(b) The greater part of neuter verbs.

(c) All reflexive verbs.

(d) All impersonal verbs.

sein to conjugate some neuter or intransitive verbs.

werden to conjugate (a) The future tenses of all verbs.

(b) The passive voice of active verbs.

Observe: On the two following pages will be found a tabular list of the conjugation of the three auxiliary verbs. Let the pupil learn off well one of them at a time, and not begin the next one until the former is completely mastered.

THE FOLLOWING IS THE CONJUGATION

<i>Haben</i> (to have).			<i>Sein</i>
<div>1. Present.</div> <div>2. Imperfect.</div> <div>3. Perfect.</div> <div>4. Pluperfect.</div> <div>5. Future.</div> <div>6. P. Future.</div>	I. INDICATIVE. I have or am having <i>ich habe</i> <i>du hast</i> <i>er hat</i> <i>wir haben</i> <i>ihr habt</i> <i>sie haben</i>	II. SUBJUNCTIVE.* If I have <i>dass ich habe</i> <i>du habest</i> <i>er habe</i> <i>wir haben</i> <i>ihr habet</i> <i>sie haben</i>	I. INDICATIVE. I am <i>ich bin</i> <i>du bist</i> <i>er ist</i> <i>wir sind</i> <i>ihr seid</i> <i>sie sind</i>
	I had or was having <i>ich hatte</i> <i>du hattest</i> <i>er hatte</i> <i>wir hatten</i> <i>ihr hättet</i> <i>sie hatten</i>	If I had <i>dass ich hätte</i> <i>du hättest</i> <i>er hätte</i> <i>wir hätten</i> <i>ihr hättet</i> <i>sie hätten</i>	I was <i>ich war</i> <i>du warst</i> <i>er war</i> <i>wir waren</i> <i>ihr wartet</i> <i>sie waren</i>
	I have had <i>ich habe</i> <i>du hast</i> <i>er hat</i> <i>wir haben</i> <i>ihr habt</i> <i>sie haben</i>	If I have had <i>dass ich</i> <i>du</i> <i>er</i> <i>wir</i> <i>ihr</i> <i>sie</i>	I have been <i>ich bin</i> <i>du bist</i> <i>er ist</i> <i>wir sind</i> <i>ihr seid</i> <i>sie sind</i>
	I had had <i>ich hatte</i> <i>du hattest</i> <i>er hatte</i> <i>wir hatten</i> <i>ihr hättet</i> <i>sie hatten</i>	If I had had <i>dass ich</i> <i>du</i> <i>er</i> <i>wir</i> <i>ihr</i> <i>sie</i>	I had been <i>ich war</i> <i>du warst</i> <i>er war</i> <i>wir waren</i> <i>ihr wartet</i> <i>sie waren</i>
	I shall or will have <i>ich werde</i> <i>du wirst</i> <i>er wird</i> <i>wir werden</i> <i>ihr werdet</i> <i>sie werden</i>	If I shall or will have <i>dass ich haben werde</i> <i>du haben werdest</i> <i>er haben werde</i> <i>wir haben werden</i> <i>ihr haben werdet</i> <i>sie haben werden</i>	I shall or will be <i>ich werde</i> <i>du wirst</i> <i>er wird</i> <i>wir werden</i> <i>ihr werdet</i> <i>sie werden</i>
	I shall or will have had <i>ich werde</i> <i>du wirst</i> <i>er wird</i> <i>wir werden</i> <i>ihr werdet</i> <i>sie werden</i>	If I shall or will have had <i>dass ich</i> <i>du</i> <i>er</i> <i>wir</i> <i>ihr</i> <i>sie</i>	I shall or will have been <i>ich werde</i> <i>du wirst</i> <i>er wird</i> <i>wir werden</i> <i>ihr werdet</i> <i>sie werden</i>
III. IMP. S. have (thou) <i>habe</i>. P. have (you) <i>habet</i>			be (thou) <i>sei</i>
IV. INF. <div> Present. to have, <i>haben</i>. Past. to have had, <i>gehabt haben</i>. Pres. Part. having, <i>habend</i>. Past Part. had, <i>gehabt</i>. </div>			<div> to be, to have been, being, been, </div>

* There are several other conjunctions that govern the subjunctive. (See Rules on conjunctions.) We take *dass* for example.

3 AUXILIARY VERBS.

	Werden* (to be).	
IMPERATIVE.	I. INDICATIVE. I am, &c.	II. SUBJUNCTIVE. If I be.
<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>dasz ich werde " du werdest " er werde " wir werden " ihr werdet " sie werden</p>
<p>ich wäre du wärest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>ich würde (ward) du wärest (wärest) er würde (ward) wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>dasz ich würde " du wärest " er würde " wir würden " ihr würdet " sie würden</p>
<p>ich bin du bist er ist wir sind ihr seid sie sind</p>	<p>I have been, &c. ich bin du bist er ist wir sind ihr seid sie sind</p>	<p>If I have been, &c. dasz ich " du " er " wir " ihr " sie</p>
<p>gewesen sei seiest seien seiet seien</p>	<p>worden (geworden) worden (geworden) worden (geworden) worden (geworden) worden (geworden) worden (geworden)</p>	<p>seien seiest seien seiet seien seien</p>
<p>ich wäre du wärest er wäre wir wären ihr wäret sie wären</p>	<p>I had been, &c. ich war du warst er war wir waren ihr wäret sie waren</p>	<p>If I had been, &c. dasz ich " du " er " wir " ihr " sie</p>
<p>wäre wärest wäre wären wäret wären</p>	<p>wären wäret wären wäret wären wären</p>	<p>wäre wärest wäre wären wäret wären</p>
<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>I shall or will be ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>If I shall or will be. dasz ich " du " er " wir " ihr " sie</p>
<p>werde werdest werde werden werdet werden</p>	<p>werden werdest werden werden werdet werden</p>	<p>werde werdest werde werden werdet werden</p>
<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>I shall or will have been ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>If I shall or will have been. dasz ich " du " er " wir " ihr " sie</p>
<p>werde werdest werde werden werdet werden</p>	<p>worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein)</p>	<p>werde werdest werde werden werdet werden</p>
<p>gewesen sein werde werdest werde werden werdet werden</p>	<p>worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein)</p>	<p>worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein) worden (geworden sein)</p>
<p>ich sei du seiest er sei wir seien ihr seiet sie seien</p>	<p>be (thou) werde be (you) werdet</p>	<p>be (you) werdet</p>
<p>ich bin du bist er ist wir sind ihr seid sie sind</p>	<p>to be, werden to have been, worden (geworden sein) being, werdend worden (geworden)</p>	

that werden, as a neuter verb, implies to become, to grow; and the
imply is geworden and not worden,

RULE 62.—The indicative mood of all verbs can be used interrogatively,⁶⁷ by putting in simple tenses the nominative case (pronoun or noun) after the verb, and in compound tenses between the auxiliary verb and the past participle ; as—

Present tense.	S.	have I ?	am I ?	am I (loved) ?	}	gelobt ?
		<i>hab'ich ?</i> ⁶⁸	<i>bin ich ?</i>	<i>werde ich</i>		
		<i>hast du ?</i>	<i>bist du ?</i>	<i>wirst du</i>		
	P.	<i>hat er ?</i>	<i>ist er ?</i>	<i>wird er</i>		
		<i>haben wir ?</i>	<i>sind wir ?</i>	<i>werden wir</i>		
		<i>habt ihr ?</i>	<i>seid ihr ?</i>	<i>werdet ihr</i>		
Pluperfect tense.	S.	had I had ?	had I been ?	had I been ?	}	gelobt worden ?
		<i>hatte ich</i>	<i>war ich</i>	<i>war ich</i>		
		<i>hattest du</i>	<i>warst du</i>	<i>warst du</i>		
	P.	<i>hatte er</i>	<i>war er</i>	<i>war er</i>		
		<i>hatten wir</i>	<i>waren wir</i>	<i>waren wir</i>		
		<i>hattet ihr</i>	<i>waret ihr</i>	<i>waret ihr</i>		

Conjugate interrogatively, in all the tenses of the indicative mood, *haben*, *sein*, and *werden*.

RULE 63.—Every verb can be conjugated negatively by using the negation *nicht*. In simple tenses of the indicative mood it is placed after the verb, and in compound ones between the auxiliary verb and the past participle ; as—

Present Ind.	S.	I have not	I am not	I am not (loved)	}	gelobt
		<i>ich habe nicht</i>	<i>ich bin nicht</i>	<i>ich werde nicht</i>		
		<i>du hast nicht</i>	<i>du bist nicht</i>	<i>du wirst nicht</i>		
	P.	<i>er hat nicht</i>	<i>er ist nicht</i>	<i>er wird nicht</i>		
		<i>wir haben nicht</i>	<i>wir sind nicht</i>	<i>wir werden nicht</i>		
		<i>ihr habt nicht</i>	<i>ihr seid nicht</i>	<i>ihr werdet nicht</i>		

REMARK 67.—Observe on the interrogative conjugation of verbs :

(a) That the final *e* of the verb is left out on account of euphony, but in that case it must be replaced by an apostrophe, as *hab'ich*.

(b) That the imperfect of the subjunctive is sometimes used in the interrogative form, but merely suppress the conjunction *wenn* ; as—*hätte ich Geld*, instead of *wenn ich Geld hätte* ; *wär'ich gesund*, instead of *wenn ich gesund wäre*.

In the subjunctive mood the negation (*nicht*) is placed in simple and compound tenses before the verb ; as—

Present Ind.	S.	I do not, I have <i>dasz ich nicht habe</i> <i>dasz du nicht habest</i> <i>dasz er nicht habe</i>	Past Def. Ind.	S.	that I have not had <i>dasz ich nicht</i> <i>dasz du nicht</i> <i>dasz er nicht</i>	gehät	<i>habe</i>
	P.	<i>dasz wir nicht haben</i> <i>dasz ihr nicht habet</i> <i>dasz sie nicht haben</i>		P.	<i>dasz wir nicht</i> <i>dasz ihr nicht</i> <i>dasz sie nicht</i>		<i>habest</i> <i>habe</i> <i>haben</i> <i>habet</i> <i>haben</i>

Conjugate in the negative form the three auxiliary verbs separately, and through all their tenses and moods.

RULE 64.—Active or transitive verbs are those which express an action passing over to an object, and they must all answer to the question *whom* or *what* ? They all have a passive voice, in which the nominative of the active becomes the indirect object of the passive form ; thus—*ich liebe meinen Vater* is the active voice of *lieben*, answering to the question, *wen liebe ich* ? (whom do I love ?) *meinen Vater* (the direct objective case of *lieben*).

But *mein Vater wird von mir geliebt* is the passive voice of *lieben*, since *Vater*, which was the objective case of the active form, is now the nominative case of the passive voice.

Thus the passive voice of a verb is the reverse of an active form ; the nominative and accusative cases of the active verb becoming respectively the indirect object and the nominative case of the passive voice.

Illustrate the above rule in the following examples :

das Volk liebt seinen König,
der Schüler ehrt seinen Lehrer,
Mein Bruder schreibt einen Brief,
Dieser Hund ist von seinem Herrn verkauft worden.

RULE 65.—An active verb can be either regular or irregular. Every regular verb can be conjugated according to the following model :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Loben (to praise).Root (*lob*).

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present.

I praise, I do praise, I am praising, &c., &c.	if or that I praise, &c., &c.
<i>ich lobe*</i>	<i>dasz ich lobe</i>
<i>du lobst</i>	<i>dasz du lobest</i>
<i>er lobt</i>	<i>dasz er lobe</i>
<i>wir loben</i>	<i>dasz wir loben</i>
<i>ihr lobt</i>	<i>dasz ihr lobet</i>
<i>sie loben</i>	<i>dasz sie loben</i>

2. Imperfect.

I praised, I was praising, &c.	if I praised or were praising
<i>ich lobte</i>	<i>dasz ich lobte</i>
<i>du lobtest</i>	<i>dasz du lobtest</i>
<i>er lobte</i>	<i>dasz er lobte</i>
<i>wir lobten</i>	<i>dasz wir lobten</i>
<i>ihr lobtet</i>	<i>dasz ihr lobtet</i>
<i>sie lobten</i>	<i>dasz sie lobten</i>

3. Perfect.†

I have praised, &c., &c.	if or that I have praised, &c.
<i>ich habe gelobt, &c., &c.</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt habe, &c., &c.</i>

4. Pluperfect.

I had praised, &c., &c.	if or that I had praised, &c.
<i>ich hatte gelobt, &c., &c.</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt hätte, &c., &c.</i>

5. Future.

I shall or will praise, &c., &c.	if or that I will praise, &c.
<i>ich werde loben, &c., &c.</i>	<i>dasz ich loben werde, &c., &c.</i>

* Observe that the endings to be added to the root are printed in different type.

† The compound tenses of active verbs are formed by *haben*. (See page 38.)

6. *Past Future.*

I shall or will have praised	if or that I will have praised, &c.
<i>ich werde gelobt haben</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt haben werde,</i>
<i>du wirst, &c., &c.</i>	<i>&c., &c.</i>

.III. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

love, praise thou	lobet, praise ye
-------------------	------------------

IV. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. <i>loben</i> , to praise	Past. <i>gelobt haben</i> , to have praised
-----------------------------------	---

PARTICIPLES.

Present. <i>lobend</i> , praising	Past. <i>gelobt</i> , praised
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

The following is the model for the conjugation of the passive voice of any regular active verb :

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present.*

I am praised	If or that I be praised
<i>ich werde gelobt</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt werde</i>
<i>du wirst gelobt</i>	<i>dasz du gelobt werdest</i>
<i>er wird gelobt</i>	<i>dasz er gelobt werde</i>
<i>wir werden gelobt</i>	<i>dasz wir gelobt werden</i>
<i>ihr werdet gelobt</i>	<i>dasz ihr gelobt werdet</i>
<i>sie werden gelobt</i>	<i>dasz sie gelobt werden</i>

2. *Imperfect.*

I was praised	If or that I were praised
<i>ich wurde gelobt</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt würde</i>
<i>du wurdest gelobt</i>	<i>dasz du gelobt würdest</i>
<i>er wurde gelobt</i>	<i>dasz er gelobt würde</i>
<i>wir wurden gelobt</i>	<i>dasz wir gelobt würden</i>
<i>ihr wurdet gelobt</i>	<i>dasz ihr gelobt würdet</i>
<i>sie wurden gelobt</i>	<i>dasz sie gelobt würden</i>

3. *Perfect.*

I have been praised	If I have been praised
<i>ich bin gelobt worden &c. &c.*</i>	<i>dasz ich gelobt worden sei, &c.</i>

* Observe that the compound tenses of the passive voice are formed by *werden*. (See page 39.)

RULE 68.—Model of the conjugation of irregular verbs :

Finden (to find).

I. INDICATIVE.

Root (*find*).

II. SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

I find, I do find, or I am finding <i>ich finde</i> <i>du findest</i> <i>er findet</i> <i>wir finden</i> <i>ihr findet</i> <i>sie finden</i>	If I find, if I do find, If I am finding <i>dasz ich finde</i> <i>dasz du findest</i> <i>dasz er finde</i> <i>dasz wir finden</i> <i>dasz ihr findet</i> <i>dasz sie finden</i>
---	--

2. *Imperfect.*

I found, or was finding <i>ich fand</i> <i>du fandest</i> <i>er fand</i> <i>wir fanden</i> <i>ihr fandet</i> <i>sie fanden</i>	If I found, or were finding <i>dasz ich fände</i> <i>dasz du fändest</i> <i>dasz er fände</i> <i>dasz wir fänden</i> <i>dasz ihr fändet</i> <i>dasz sie fänden</i>
--	--

3. *Perfect.*

I have found, &c., &c. <i>ich habe gefunden, &c., &c.</i>	If I have found, &c., &c. <i>dasz ich gefunden habe, &c.</i>
--	---

4. *Pluperfect.*

I had found, &c., &c. <i>ich hatte gefunden, &c., &c.</i>	If I had found, &c., &c. <i>dasz ich gefunden hätte, &c.</i>
--	---

5. *Future.*

I shall or will find <i>ich werde finden, &c., &c.</i>	If I shall or will find, &c., &c. <i>dasz ich finden werde, &c., &c.</i>
---	---

6. *Past Future.*

I shall or will have found <i>ich werde gefunden haben,</i> <i>&c., &c.</i>	If I shall or will have found <i>dasz ich gefunden haben werde,</i> <i>&c., &c.</i>
---	---

III. IMPERATIVE.

find (thou), <i>finde</i>	| find (st ye), <i>finde</i> t
---------------------------	--

IV. INFINITIVE.

Present. to find, <i>finden</i>	| Past. to have found, <i>gefunden</i> <i>haben</i>
---------------------------------	--

Participles.

Present. finding, <i>findend</i>	| Past. found, <i>gefunden</i>
----------------------------------	------------------------------

RULE 69.—The following is a list of all the irregular verbs, divided into six classes.⁶⁸

FIRST CLASS.

Containing about twenty verbs, irregular in various ways. (Each verb to be conjugated in full.)

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>brennen</i> , to burn	<i>brenne</i> , &c.	<i>brannte</i> ; <i>brennte</i>	<i>gebrannt</i>
<i>bringen</i> , to bring		<i>brachte</i> ; <i>brächte</i>	<i>gebracht</i>
<i>däuchten</i> (ref.), to seem	<i>mir däucht</i> ^{tet}	<i>mir däuchte</i>	<i>gedäucht</i>
<i>denken</i> , to think		<i>dachte</i> ; <i>dächte</i>	<i>gedacht</i>
<i>dürfen</i> , to dare	<i>darf</i> , <i>darfst</i> , <i>darf</i> ; <i>dürfe</i> , <i>dürfest</i>	<i>darfte</i> ; <i>dürfte</i> (imp.)	<i>gedurft</i> <i>dürfe</i>
<i>haben</i> , to have	See Rule 61.		
<i>handhaben</i> , to handle	(reg.)		

REMARK 68.—On the use of the lists of irregular verbs:—

(a) Tenses or persons not written out in full are conjugated according to the model and the rules on regular verbs. (See Rule 65.)

(b) All derived or compound verbs, if not particularly marked, are conjugated in the same manner as the verb from which they are derived or with which they are compounded.

(c) That the greatest part of irregular verbs can be used reflectively.

(d) That a great many neuter verbs which do not absolutely require *sein* or *haben* and *sein* are not marked, inasmuch as they only differ from the active verbs in the government of case.

(e) Marks and abbreviations used in these lists:

(reg.) Regularly conjugated.

(ref.) A reflexive verb.

(imp.) An impersonal verb.

(def.) A defective verb.

* A neuter verb to be conjugated with *sein*.

† * A neuter verb to be conjugated with *haben* or *sein*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>kennen</i> , to know <i>können</i> , to be able	<i>kann, kannst,</i> <i>kann; könne,</i> <i>könnest, &c.</i>	<i>kannte; kennete</i> <i>konnte; könnte</i>	<i>gekant</i> <i>gekonnt</i>
<i>lassen</i> , allow	<i>lässt, lässt, &c.</i>	<i>lies; liess</i> (imp.)	<i>gelassen</i> <i>lass'</i>
<i>mögen</i> , to like (might)	<i>mag, magst, mag;</i> <i>möge, &c.</i>	<i>möge or mochte;</i> <i>möchte, &c.</i>	<i>gemocht</i>
<i>müssen</i> , to be obliged	<i>musz, muszt,</i> <i>musz; müsse, &c.</i>	<i>muszte; müßte</i>	<i>gemuszt</i>
<i>nennen</i> , to name <i>sein</i> ,* to be <i>sollen</i> , to be obliged	See Rule 61. <i>soll, sollst, soll, &c.</i>	<i>nannte; nannte</i>	<i>genannt</i>
<i>senden</i> , to send <i>thun</i> , to do	<i>thue, thust, thut,</i> <i>thuen, thuet,</i> <i>thuen.</i>	<i>sandte; sendete</i> <i>that, thatest, &c;</i> <i>thäte, &c. (imp.)</i>	<i>gesollt</i> <i>du sollst</i> <i>gesandt</i> <i>gethan</i> <i>thut</i>
<i>werden</i> ,* to become <i>wissen</i> , to know	See Rule 61. <i>weisz, weizt,</i> <i>weisz, &c.</i>	<i>wusste; wüßte</i>	<i>gewusst</i>
<i>wollen</i> , to be willing	<i>will, willst, will,</i> <i>&c.</i>		<i>gewollt</i>
<i>bedürfen</i> , to need <i>vermögen</i> , to have the power	like <i>dürfen</i> like <i>mögen</i>		
<i>rennen</i> ,* † to run, to run through	like <i>nennen</i>		
<i>wenden</i> , to turn	like <i>senden</i>		

SECOND CLASS.

Containing about sixty-five verbs; changing the radical vowel into *a* for the imperfect, and into *a o u* for the past participle, which ends in *en*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>befehlen</i> , to order <i>beginnen</i> , to begin <i>bergen</i> , to conceal <i>herbergen</i> , to harbour <i>bersten</i> ,* to burst	<i>befiehlt, befiehlt</i> <i>birgst, birgt, &c.</i> (reg.)	<i>befahl; beföhle</i> <i>begann; begün-</i> <i>barg; bürge, bürge</i> (imp.) <i>barst, borst;</i> <i>bürste, bürste</i>	<i>beföhlen</i> <i>begonnen</i> <i>geborgen</i> <i>birg</i> <i>geborsten</i>
<i>binden</i> , to find <i>bitten</i> , to pray <i>brechen</i> , to break <i>dreschen</i> , to trash <i>dringen</i> , to urge	<i>brichst, bricht, &c.</i> <i>drieschest, driescht</i>	<i>bat; bäte</i> <i>brach; bräche</i> <i>drang; dränge</i>	<i>gebunden</i> <i>gebeten</i> <i>gebrochen</i> <i>gedroschen</i> <i>gedrungen</i>

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>empfehlen</i> , to recom- mend	<i>empfehlst</i> , <i>empfiehlst</i> , &c.	<i>empfaß</i> ; <i>empfähle</i> (imp.)	<i>empfohlen</i> <i>empfiehl</i>
<i>erschrecken</i> , * to be ter- rified	<i>erschrickst</i> , <i>erschrickt</i> , &c.	<i>erschrak</i> ; <i>erschraße</i>	<i>erschrocken</i>
<i>erschrecken</i> † (act.), to terrify	(reg.)		
<i>essen</i> , to eat	<i>isst</i> or <i>iszt</i> , <i>isst</i>	<i>aß</i> ; <i>äße</i>	<i>gegessen</i> (<i>isz</i>)
<i>gebären</i> , to bring forth		<i>gebar</i> ; <i>gebäre</i>	<i>geboren</i>
<i>gebären</i> (def.), to de- mean oneself	(reg.)		
<i>geben</i> , to give	<i>gibst</i> , <i>gibt</i> , &c.	<i>gab</i> ; <i>gäbe</i>	<i>gegeben</i>
<i>gelten</i> , to be worth	<i>giltst</i> , <i>gilt</i> , &c.	<i>galt</i> ; <i>gälte</i>	<i>gegolten</i>
<i>genesen</i> , * to recover		<i>genas</i> ; <i>genäse</i>	<i>genesen</i>
<i>gewinnen</i> , to gain		<i>gewann</i> ; <i>gewönne</i>	<i>gewonnen</i>
<i>helfen</i> , to help	<i>hilfst</i> , <i>hilft</i> , &c.	<i>half</i> ; <i>hülfe</i> , <i>hülfe</i>	<i>geholfen</i>
<i>kommen</i> , * to come	<i>kommst</i> , <i>kommt</i> , &c.	<i>kam</i> ; <i>käme</i>	<i>gekommen</i>
<i>lesen</i> , to read	<i>liest</i> , <i>liest</i> , &c.	<i>las</i> ; <i>läse</i>	<i>gelesen</i>
<i>liegen</i> , * to lie down	}	<i>lag</i> ; <i>läge</i>	<i>gelegen</i>
<i>liegen</i> ,† to place (to put)			
<i>nehmen</i> , to take	<i>nimmst</i> , <i>nimmt</i> , &c.	<i>nahm</i> ; <i>nähme</i>	<i>genommen</i>
<i>sehen</i> , to see	<i>siehst</i> , <i>sieht</i> , &c.	<i>sah</i> ; <i>sähe</i>	<i>gesehen</i> (<i>siek</i>)
<i>sitzen</i> , to sit		<i>sas</i> ; <i>säße</i>	<i>gesessen</i>
<i>stechen</i> , to stand	<i>stichst</i> , <i>sticht</i> , &c.	<i>stach</i> ; <i>stäche</i>	<i>gestochen</i>
<i>stehen</i> , * † to stand		<i>stand</i> ; <i>stände</i>	<i>gestanden</i>
<i>sterben</i> , * to die	<i>stirbst</i> , <i>stirbt</i> , &c.	<i>starb</i> ; <i>stärbe</i>	<i>gestorben</i>
<i>treffen</i> , to hit	<i>triffst</i> , <i>trifft</i> , &c.	<i>traf</i> ; <i>träfe</i>	<i>getroffen</i>
<i>treten</i> , * to tread	<i>trittst</i> , <i>tritt</i> , &c.	<i>trat</i> ; <i>träte</i>	<i>getreten</i>
<i>sprechen</i> , to speak	like <i>brechen</i>		
<i>stehlen</i> , to steal	like <i>befehlen</i>		
<i>schelten</i> , to scold	like <i>gelten</i>		
<i>geschehen</i> * (imp.), to happen	} like <i>sehen</i>		
<i>versehen</i> , to overlook			
<i>verderben</i> , * to spoil	} like <i>sterben</i>		
<i>werben</i> , to enlist			
<i>finden</i> , to find	} like <i>binden</i>		
<i>rinnen</i> ,† to leak			
<i>rinnen</i> , * to flow			
<i>schwinden</i> , * to vanish			
<i>verschwinden</i> , * to dis- appear	} like <i>beginnen</i>		
<i>winden</i> , to wind			
<i>empfinden</i> , to experi- ence			
<i>schwimmen</i> , * † to swim			
<i>sinnen</i> , to meditate			
<i>spinnen</i> , to spin			
<i>besinnen</i> , to recollect			

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>gelingen</i> , * to succeed	} like <i>dringen</i>		
<i>mislingen</i> * (imp.), to fail			
<i>klingen</i> , to sound			
<i>ringen</i> , to ring			
<i>schlingen</i> , to sling			
<i>schwingen</i> , to swing			
<i>singen</i> , to sing			
<i>sinken</i> , to sink			
<i>springen</i> , to spring			
<i>trinken</i> , to drink			
<i>zwingen</i> , to force	} like <i>essen</i>		
<i>fressen</i> , to eat (of animals)			
<i>messen</i> , to measure			
<i>vergessen</i> , to forget			

THIRD CLASS.

Containing about thirty verbs, and changing the radical vowel into *ei* in the imperfect, and *ie* or unchanged for the past participle, which ends in *en*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>blasen</i> , to blow	<i>bläsest, bläst, &c.</i>	<i>blies; bliese</i>	<i>geblasen</i>
<i>bleiben</i> ,* to remain		<i>blieb; bliebe</i>	<i>geblieben</i>
<i>braten</i> , to roast	<i>brätst, brät, &c.</i>	<i>briet; briete</i>	<i>gebraten</i>
<i>fallen</i> ,* to fall	<i>fällst, fällt, &c.</i>	<i>fiel; fiel</i>	<i>gefallen</i>
<i>fällen</i> , to fell (reg.)			
<i>gedeihen</i> ,* to thrive		<i>gedieh; gediehe</i>	<i>gediehen</i>
<i>halten</i> , to hold	<i>hältst, hält, &c.</i>	<i>hielt; hielte</i>	<i>gehalten</i>
<i>hauen</i> , to hew		<i>hieb; hiebe</i>	<i>gehauen</i>
<i>heissen</i> , to be called		<i>hiesz; hiesze</i>	<i>geheissen</i>
<i>laufen</i> ,*† to run (flow)	<i>läufst, läuft, &c.</i>	<i>lief; liefe</i>	<i>gelaufen</i>
<i>meiden</i> , to avoid		<i>mied; miede</i>	<i>gemieden</i>
<i>preisen</i> , to praise		<i>pries; pries</i>	<i>gepriesen</i>
<i>lobpreisen</i> , to praise (with song)	(reg.)		
<i>rathen</i> , to advise	<i>räthst, räth, &c.</i>	<i>rieth; riethe</i>	<i>gerathen</i>
<i>rufen</i> , to call		<i>rief; riefe</i>	<i>gerufen</i>
<i>scheinen</i> (imp), to seem		<i>schien; schiene</i>	<i>geschieden</i>
<i>schreiben</i> , to write		<i>schrab; schriebe</i>	<i>geschrieben</i>
<i>schreien</i> , to scream		<i>schrie; schrie</i>	<i>geschrien</i>
<i>stossen</i> , to push	<i>stößest, stößt</i>	<i>stiesz; stiesze</i>	<i>gestossen</i>
<i>ziehen</i> , to accuse	<i>ziehst, zieht</i>	<i>zieh; ziehe</i>	<i>gezogen</i>
<i>gefallen</i> , to please	like <i>fallen</i> .		
<i>treiben</i> , to drive	} like <i>bleiben</i>		
<i>reiben</i> , to rub			
<i>schweigen</i> , to be silent			
<i>steigen</i> , to ascend			

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>schlafen</i> , to sleep	like <i>blasen</i>		
<i>scheiden</i> ,* to depart (to part with)	like <i>meiden</i>		
<i>scheiden</i> , to divide (to separate)	(reg.)		
<i>weisen</i> , to show	like <i>preisen</i>		
<i>leihen</i> , to lend	} like <i>zeihen</i> {		<i>geliehen</i> , <i>verzichen</i>
<i>verzeihen</i> , to pardon			

FOURTH CLASS.

Containing about forty verbs, and changing the radical vowel into *i* in the imperfect, and into different vowels in the past participle, which ends in *en*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>befleissen</i> (ref.), to ap- ply to		<i>besüß; besüßte</i>	<i>besessen</i>
<i>befleissagen</i> (ref.), to endeavour	(reg.)		
<i>bleichen</i> , to turn pale		<i>blüch; blüchte</i>	<i>geblichen</i>
<i>bleichen</i> , to bleach	(reg.)		
<i>fangen</i> , to catch	<i>fängst, fängt, &c.</i>	<i>fing; finge</i>	<i>gefangen</i>
<i>gehen</i> ,* to go		<i>ging; gange</i>	<i>gegangen</i>
<i>gleiten</i> ,* † to glide, to be glided		<i>glitt; glitte</i>	<i>geglitten</i>
<i>begleiten</i> , to accom- pany	(reg.)		
<i>greifen</i> , to seize		<i>griff; griffe</i>	<i>gegriffen</i>
<i>hängen</i> , to hang loose	<i>hängst, hängt, &c.</i>	<i>hing; hinge</i>	<i>gehangen</i>
<i>hängen</i> , to hang	} (reg.)		
<i>anhängen</i> , to append			
<i>leiden</i> , to suffer		<i>litt; lütte</i>	<i>gelitten</i>
<i>schleifen</i> , to raze	(reg.)		
<i>schneiden</i> , to cut	(reg.)	<i>schnitt; schnitte</i>	<i>geschnitten</i>
<i>weichen</i> , to soften	(reg.)		
<i>anhängen</i> , to be at- tached	like <i>hängen</i>		
<i>beissen</i> , to bite	} like <i>befleissen</i>		
<i>reissen</i> , to tear			
<i>schmeissen</i> , to throw	}		
<i>gleichen</i> , to equal			
<i>vergleichen</i> , to com- pare	} like <i>bleichen</i>		
<i>erbleichen</i> , to grow pale			
<i>verbleichen</i> ,* to wane (fade)			
<i>weichen</i> , to yield			
<i>schleichen</i> ,* to sneak			

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>schleichen</i> , to smuggle	(reg.)		
<i>gleichen</i> , to level (smooth)			
<i>streichen</i> , to stroke			
<i>streiten</i> , to contend			
<i>reiten</i> ,* to ride			
<i>reiten</i> ,† to ride a horse	like <i>gleiten</i>		
<i>schreiten</i> , to step (stride)			
<i>pfeifen</i> , to whistle			
<i>schleifen</i> , to sharpen	like <i>greifen</i>		
<i>keifen</i> , to chide (up- braid)			
<i>kneifen</i> , <i>kneipen</i> , to pluck			

FIFTH CLASS.

Containing about eighty verbs, and changing the radical vowel into *o* in the imperfect and the past participle, which ends in *en*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>beklemmen</i> (def.), to oppress	only used in	comp. tenses	<i>bekommen</i>
<i>bellen</i> , to bark			<i>gebollen</i> , <i>gebellt</i>
<i>betriegen</i> } or } to cheat	(reg.)	<i>betrog</i> ; <i>beträge</i>	<i>betrogen</i>
<i>betrügen</i> }		<i>bewog</i> ; <i>bewöge</i>	<i>bewogen</i>
<i>bewegen</i> (ref.) to in- duce		<i>bog</i> ; <i>böge</i>	<i>gebogen</i>
<i>bewegen</i> , to move		<i>bot</i> ; <i>böte</i>	<i>geboten</i>
<i>biegen</i> ,† to bend		<i>erkor</i> ; <i>erköre</i>	<i>erkoren</i>
<i>biegen</i> ,* to be bent		<i>erlosch</i> ; <i>erlösche</i>	<i>erloschen</i>
<i>bieten</i> , to offer		<i>erscholl</i> ; <i>erschölle</i>	<i>erschollen</i>
<i>erkären</i> , to choose			
<i>erlöschen</i> ,* to expire			
<i>erlöschen</i> , to put out, in the sense of			
<i>auslöschen</i> .			
<i>erschallen</i> , to resound			
<i>schallen</i> , to sound			
<i>erwägen</i> , { to ponder { to consider			
<i>fechten</i> , to fight			
<i>fliegen</i> ,* to fly			
<i>fliegen</i> ,† to fly (to dance)	(reg. active in poetry)	<i>flog</i> ; <i>flöge</i>	<i>geflogen</i> <i>geflogen</i>
<i>fliehen</i> ,* to flee			
<i>fliehen</i> ,† to avoid		<i>floh</i> ; <i>flöhe</i>	<i>geflohen</i>

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>fließen</i> , to flow		<i>floß</i> ; <i>flösa</i>	<i>gefloßen</i>
<i>flößen</i> , to float	(reg.)		
<i>frieren</i> , † * to freeze	(imp., ref.)	<i>fror</i> ; <i>fröre</i>	<i>gefroren</i>
<i>gären</i> , or <i>gähren</i> , } to ferment		{ <i>gor</i> ; <i>göre</i> <i>gohr</i> ; <i>göhre</i>	<i>gegoren</i> <i>gegohren</i>
<i>glimmen</i> , to glow		<i>glomm</i> ; <i>glömm</i>	<i>geglommen</i>
<i>heben</i> , to lift		<i>hob</i> ; <i>höbe</i>	<i>gehoben</i>
<i>kriechen</i> , † * to creep		<i>kroch</i> ; <i>kröche</i>	<i>gekrochen</i>
<i>lügen</i> , to lie		<i>log</i> ; <i>löge</i>	<i>gelogen</i>
<i>melken</i> , to milk		<i>molk</i> ; <i>mölke</i>	<i>gemolken</i>
<i>pflügen</i> , to cultivate	(reg.)	<i>pflög</i> ; <i>pflöge</i>	<i>gepflügen</i>
<i>pflügen</i> , in the habit of			
<i>quellen</i> , * to spring	<i>quillst</i> , <i>quillt</i> , &c.	<i>quoll</i> ; <i>quölle</i> (imp.)	<i>gequollen</i> <i>quill</i>
<i>quellen</i> , † to soak	(reg.)		
<i>rächen</i> , to avenge		<i>rächte</i> ; <i>rächte</i> in poetry	<i>gerochen</i> <i>gerächt</i>
<i>saufen</i> , to drink (of animals)	<i>saüfst</i> , <i>saüft</i> , &c.	<i>soff</i> ; <i>söffe</i>	<i>gesoffen</i>
<i>saugen</i> , to suck		<i>sog</i> ; <i>söge</i>	<i>gesogen</i>
<i>säugen</i> , to suckle	(reg.)		
<i>scheren</i> , to shear		<i>shor</i> ; <i>shöre</i>	<i>geschoren</i>
<i>bescheren</i> , to shave			
<i>bescheren</i> , to grant	(reg.)		
<i>schieben</i> , to push		<i>shob</i> ; <i>shöbe</i>	<i>geschoben</i>
<i>schmelzen</i> , * to melt	<i>schmilzest</i> , <i>schmilzt</i> , &c. (reg. active)	<i>schmolz</i> ; <i>schmölze</i>	<i>geschmolzen</i>
<i>schmelzen</i> , to melt		<i>schmob</i> ; <i>schnöbe</i>	<i>geschmoben</i>
<i>schmieben</i> , to breathe		<i>schrob</i> ; <i>schrübe</i>	<i>geschroben</i>
<i>schrauben</i> , to screw		<i>schwor</i> ; <i>schwöre</i>	<i>geschworen</i>
<i>schwören</i> , to swear		<i>schwoll</i> ; <i>schwölle</i>	<i>geschwollen</i>
<i>schwellen</i> , * to rise (to swell)	<i>schwillst</i> , <i>schwillt</i> &c. (reg.)		
<i>schwellen</i> , to raise	(reg.)		
<i>verschwellen</i> , to new- sill	(reg.)		
<i>sieden</i> , to seethe		<i>sott</i> ; <i>sötte</i>	<i>gesotten</i>
<i>wägen</i> , to balance (to ponder)	and all its deri- vations.	(reg.)	
<i>wiegen</i> , to weigh (to rock)		<i>wog</i> ; <i>wöge</i>	<i>gewogen</i>
<i>weben</i> , to form	(in poetry)	<i>wob</i> ; <i>wöbe</i>	<i>gewoben</i>
<i>weben</i> , to weave	(reg. active)		
<i>ziehen</i> , * to move		<i>zog</i> ; <i>züge</i>	<i>gezogen</i>
<i>ziehen</i> , † to draw			
<i>anfechten</i> , to attack	{ like <i>fechten</i>		
<i>flechten</i> , to braid			
<i>gebieten</i> , to bid	like <i>bieten</i>		
<i>klimmen</i> , * to climb	like <i>glimmen</i>		
<i>kürzen</i> , to elect	like <i>erküren</i>		

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>genießen</i> , to enjoy	} like <i>fließen</i>		
<i>verdriesen</i> , to vex			
<i>giesen</i> , to pour			
<i>schließen</i> , to conclude			
<i>sprieszen</i> ,* to sprout (to shoot)	} like <i>erlöschen</i>	•	
<i>löschen</i> ,† to extinguish			
<i>löschen</i> ,* to be ex- tinguished	} like <i>kriechen</i>		
<i>riecken</i> , to swell			
<i>stieben</i> ,† to start	} like <i>schieben</i>		
<i>stieben</i> ,* to fly about			
<i>triegen</i> , or <i>trügen</i> , } to delude	like <i>betrügen</i>		
<i>verlieren</i> , to lose	like <i>frieren</i>		
<i>verlöschen</i> ,† to extin- guish	} like <i>erlöschen</i>		
<i>verlöschen</i> ,* to become extinct			
<i>verzichen</i> , to delay	like <i>ziehen</i>		

SIXTH CLASS.

Containing about twenty-five verbs, and changing the radical vowel into *u* in the imperfect tense and the past participle, which ends in *en*.

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>backen</i> , to bake	<i>bäckst, bäckt, &c</i>	<i>buk, backte; büke, bückte</i>	<i>gebacken</i>
<i>dingen</i> , to bargain	} <i>fährst, &c.</i> (reg.)	<i>dung; dünge</i>	<i>gedungen</i>
<i>fahren</i> ,† to drive		} <i>fuhr; führe</i>	<i>gefahren</i>
<i>fahren</i> ,* to move on			
<i>willfahren</i> , to comply			
<i>fallen</i> , to fold		{ <i>neuter</i> active	<i>gefüllen</i>
<i>laden</i> , to load			<i>gefaltet</i>
<i>mahlen</i> , to grind	(reg.)	<i>lud; lüde</i>	<i>geladen</i>
<i>mahlen</i> , to paint			<i>gemahlen</i>
<i>salzen</i> , to salt	(reg.)	<i>schuf; schüfe</i>	<i>gemahlt</i>
<i>schaffen</i> to create			<i>gesalzen</i>
<i>anschaffen</i> , to procure	(reg.)		<i>geschaffen</i>
<i>schinden</i> , to flay	<i>schlägst, schlägt, &c.</i> (reg.)	<i>schund; schünde</i>	<i>geschunden</i>
<i>schlagen</i> , to beat		<i>schlug; schüge</i>	
<i>berathschlagen</i> , to de- liberate	(reg.)		
<i>rathschlagen</i> , to hold counsel	(reg.)		

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperfect.	Past Part.
<i>schwören</i> , to swear		<i>schwur</i> ; <i>schwüre, schwöre</i>	<i>geschworen</i>
<i>wachsen</i> ,* to grow	<i>wächstest</i> , <i>wächst, &c.</i>	<i>wuchs</i> ; <i>wüchse</i>	<i>gewachsen</i>
<i>waschen</i> , to wash	<i>wäschest</i> , <i>wäscht, &c.</i>	<i>wusch</i> ; <i>wüsche</i>	<i>gewaschen</i>
<i>spalten</i> ,* to split	like <i>fallen</i>		
<i>spalten</i> , to chip	(reg.)		
<i>einladen</i> , to invite	like <i>laden</i>		
<i>tragen</i> , to carry	like <i>schlagen</i>		

NEUTER VERBS.

RULE 70.—Intransitive or neuter verbs express a state of being or rest, a transition from one state to another, without requiring an object to act upon, as—*ich bin*, I am ; *ich schlafe*, I sleep ; *ich gehe*, I go ; *ich erwache*, I awake, &c. Some of them take in their compound tenses, *haben*, and some *sein* ; others take both *haben* and *sein*, according to their signification.⁶⁹

REMARK 69.—How to find out the auxiliary verb with which neuter verbs are to be conjugated.

(a) *sein* take :

1. Neuter verbs expressing a motion towards a fixed place or end, as—*gehen*, to go ; *laufen*, to run ; *kriechen*, to creep ; *fahren*, to drive ; *reiten*, to ride ; *reisen*, to travel ; *fallen*, to fall ; *fließen*, to flow ; *steigen*, to mount ; *springen*, to spring ; *kommen*, to come ; *fliehen*, to flee ; *entkommen*, *entwischen*, to escape, &c., &c.

2. Neuter verbs expressing a transition from one state to another, or the continuation of the state, as—*sinken*, to sink ; *begegnen*, to meet ; *sterben*, to die : *erblassen*, *erbleichen*, to grow pale ; *verdorren*, to dry up ; *gelingen* to succeed ; *weichen*, to yield ; *verhungern*, to starve ; *erkalten*, to cool ; *wachsen*, to grow ; *reifen*, to ripen ; *gedeihen*, to prosper ; *erkranken*, to fall



RULE 71.—Many neuter verbs* can be used actively, that is, with the accusative case: thus, *reiten*, to ride; *fahren*, to drive; *tanzen*, to dance, &c., though purely neuter in their absolute meaning, can be used actively

ill; *genesen*, to recover; *einschlafen*, to go to sleep; *aufwachen*, to awake; *verschwinden*, to disappear; *herumirren*, to wander about; *stolpern*, to stumble; *scheitern*, to shipwreck; *unkommen*, to perish, &c., &c.

3. Participles used as adverbs, as—*berühmt*, celebrated; *vergnügt*, pleased; *geneigt*, inclined; *bekannt*, known.

(b) *haben* take:

1. Several neuter verbs expressing the accomplishment of an action and a state of rest, as—*blühen*, to blossom; *harren*, to abide; *dürsten*, to be thirsty; *lassen*, to leave or let; *stehen*, to stand; *sitzen*, to sit; *liegen*, to lay; *schlafen*, to sleep; *leben*, to live; *wohnen*, to dwell, &c., &c.—Observe that these verbs may be easily found out, as their past participle cannot be used adjectively.

2. All neuter verbs used reflectively or impersonally in a reflective form, as—*ich habe mich müde gegangen*, I am tired with walking; *es hat mich gefroren*, I was very cold; *sie hat sich müde gesessen*, she was tired from sitting.

3. All neuter verbs which express the sounds proceeding from a being or an element, as—*bellen*, to bark; *brüllen*, to bellow; *brausen*, to roar; *donnern*, to thunder; *grunzen*, to grunt; *schreien*, to scream; *tönen*, to sound, &c., &c.

(c) *haben* and *sein* take:

Some neuter verbs, according to their signification. They take *haben* when they are used actively, or have an active signification; and *sein* when their meaning is absolutely neuter, such are—*eilen*, to hasten; *ausbrennen*, to burn up; *fließen*, to flow; *reiten*, to ride; *umwerfen*, to overthrow; *fahren*, to drive; *gehen*, to go; *laufen*, to run; *rennen*, to run; *springen*, to spring; *kriechen*, to creep; *schwimmen*, to swim, &c., &c.

Observe that amongst the irregular verbs, all such as are marked † * belong to this class.

* Observe that all neuter verbs used actively take in their compound tenses the auxiliary *haben*. (See (c) Remark 69.)

when they govern the accusative case,⁷⁰ and thus we can say—

N. <i>Ich bin geritten.</i>	I have had a ride.
A. <i>Ich habe ein gutes Pferd geritten.</i>	I have rode (mounted) a good horse.
N. <i>Er ist auf's Land gefahren.</i>	He has gone (for a drive) into the country.
A. <i>Der Kutscher hat uns sehr gut gefahren.</i>	The coachman has driven us very well.
N. <i>Er ist im Flusse geschwommen.</i>	He has swam in the river.
A. <i>Er hat Meilen geschwommen.</i>	He has swam miles.
N. <i>Sie hat den ganzen Abend getanzt.</i>	She has danced the whole evening.
A. <i>Wir haben gestern die Schottische getanzt.</i>	We have danced yesterday the Schottische.

RULE 72.—Neuter verbs conjugated with *haben* follow the model conjugation of active verbs (see page 42);

REMARK 70.—On neuter verbs that become active.

(a) Many neuter verbs by receiving the prefixes *be*, *er*, *ver*, or *zer*;

as—

NEUTER.	ACTIVE.
<i>wohnen</i> , † to dwell	<i>bewohnen</i> , to inhabit
<i>reisen</i> , * † to travel	{ <i>bereisen</i> , to travel over
	{ <i>verreisen</i> , to spend in travelling
<i>fahren</i> , * † to drive	<i>zerfahren</i> , to drive over
<i>lachen</i> , † to laugh	<i>verlachen</i> , to deride
	{ <i>erleben</i> , to live to see
<i>leben</i> , † to live	{ <i>beleben</i> , to animate
	{ <i>verleben</i> , to spend (pass)

(b) Some neuter irregular verbs if conjugated regularly; as—

NEUTER IRREG.	ACTIVE REG.
<i>bleichen</i> , † to grow pale	<i>bleichen</i> , to bleach
<i>erschrecken</i> , * to be frightened	<i>erschrecken</i> , to frighten
<i>schwellen</i> , * to swell (rise)	<i>schwellen</i> , to raise
<i>verderben</i> , * to be ruined	<i>verderben</i> , to corrupt

All such verbs are pointed out in the list of irregular verbs.

but the following is the model for neuter verbs to be conjugated with *sein*.

Gehen (to go.) Root, *geh*.

I. INDICATIVE.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Present.

I go or am going

ich gehe

du gehst

er geht

wir gehen

ihr geht

sie gehen

If I go or am going

dasz ich gehe

dasz du gehst

dasz er gehe

dasz wir gehen

dasz ihr gehet

dasz sie gehen

(c) Certain neuter verbs changing their radical vowels or diphthongs, a, o, u, i, ie, into ä, ö, ü, e, eu, an; as—

NEUTER.

beten, † to pray
biegen, * to bend (curve)
dampfen, † to steam
dorren, * to dry up
dringen, * to press
erhalten, * to cool
ersaufen, * to be drowned
erwärmen, * to grow warm
fallen, * to fall
fließen, * to flow
haften, † to cling to
lauten, † to sound
liegen, * † to lie (repose)
nutzen, † to be useful
quillen, * † to spring (swell)
saugen, † to suck
schallen, † to sound
schmelzen, † to melt
schwanke, * † to stagger
schwellen, * to swell (rise)
schwimmen, * † to swim
sinken, * to sink (fall)
sitzen, to sit
springen, * † to leap (jump)
trinken, † to drink
wälzen, † to revolve (waltz)
wiegen, † to weigh
zahlen, † to pay

ACTIVE.

into *bitten*, to ask
 „ *beugen*, to bend (stoop)
 „ *dämpfen*, to damp (quench)
 „ *dörren*, to make dry (bake)
 „ *drängen*, to crowd (hurry)
 „ *erkälten*, to take cold
 „ *ersäufen*, to drown
 „ *erwärmen*, to warm (heat)
 „ *fällen*, to fell (kill)
 „ *flößen*, to float
 „ *heften*, to fasten (stitch)
 „ *läuten*, to toll (ring)
 „ *legen*, to lay (place)
 „ *nützen*, to use (make use of)
 „ *quellen*, to soak
 „ *säugen*, to suckle
 „ *schellen*, to ring (chime)
 „ *schmelzen*, to melt (dissolve)
 „ *schwenken*, to brandish (swing)
 „ *schwellen*, to swell (raise)
 „ *schwemmen*, to float
 „ *senken*, to sink (lower)
 „ *setzen*, to set (place)
 „ *sprengen*, to burst open
 „ *tränken*, to water
 „ *wälzen*, to roll (move)
 „ *wägen*, ponder (balance)
 „ *zählen*, to count

2. Imperfect.

I went or was going

ich ging
du gingst
er ging
wir gingen
ihr ginget
sie gingen

If I went or were going

dasz ich ginge
dasz du gingest
dasz er ginge
dasz wir gingen
dasz ihr genget
dasz sie gingen

3. Perfect.

I have gone

ich bin gegangen
du bist gegangen
er ist gegangen
wir sind gegangen
ihr seid gegangen
sie sind gegangen

If I have gone

dasz ich gegangen sei
dasz du gegangen seist
dasz er gegangen sei
dasz wir gegangen sein
dasz ihr gegangen seid
dasz sie gegangen sein

4. Pluperfect.

I had gone

ich war gegangen
du warst gegangen
er war gegangen
 &c., &c.

If I had gone

dasz ich gegangen wäre
dasz du gegangen wärest
dasz er gegangen wäre
 &c., &c.

5. Future.

I shall or will go

ich werde gehen
du wirst gehen
 &c., &c.

If I shall or will go

dasz ich gehen werde
dasz du gehen werdest
 &c., &c.

6. Past Future.

I shall or will have gone

ich werde gegangen sein
du wirst, &c., &c.

If I shall or will have gone

dasz ich gegangen sein werde
dasz du, &c., &c.

III. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Go (thou), *geh'*Plu. Go (ye), *geht.*

IV. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To go: *gehen.* Past. To have gone: *gegangen sein.*

Participles.

Present. Going: *gehend.*Past. Gone: *gegangen.*

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

RULE 73.—All active, and a great many neuter, verbs can be used reflectively by using two pronouns; the one representing the actor (nominative case), the other the object of the verb (accusative or dative cases); as—*ich lobe mich*. I praise myself; *du schmeichelst dir*, thou flatterest thyself.

RULE 74.—The reflective form is more frequently used in German than in English, viz.—

(A) To express an action falling back upon the actor himself; as—*er lobt sich*, *wir schmeicheln uns*; *sie lieben sich*.

(B) Often to express the English active or passive voice; as—

Hier geht es sich gut.

Here is good walking.

Das versteht sich.

That is understood.

Mit dieser Feder schreibt es sich gut.

This pen is a good one to write with.

(C) To express certain actions which are always reflective in German, although they are active or passive in English; as—

sich fürchten, to fear

sich freuen, to rejoice

sich bemühen, to endeavour

sich unterstehen, to dare

sich bedanken, to thank

sich schämen, to be ashamed

sich befinden, to be, or to do

&c., &c.

RULE 75.—There are also some impersonal verbs⁷¹ which are used reflectively ; as—*es hungert mich*, I am hungry ; *es freut mich*, I am glad ; *es träumt mir*,

REMARK 71.—The following impersonal verbs are used reflectively :

(a) With the dative.

<i>es ahnet</i> , it forebodes	<i>es gelingt</i> , it succeeds
<i>es begegnet</i> , it happens	<i>es genügt</i> , it suffices
<i>es bekommt</i> , it thrives	<i>es geräth</i> , it thrives
<i>es beliebt</i> , it pleases	<i>es geschieht</i> , it happens
<i>es behagt</i> , it suits	<i>es geziemt</i> , it becomes
<i>es entfällt</i> , it slips	<i>es glückt</i> , it succeeds
<i>es entgeht</i> , it escapes	<i>es graut</i> , to dread
<i>es fällt ein</i> , it occurs	<i>es hilft</i> , it avails
<i>es fehlt</i> ,	<i>es kommt vor</i> , it seems
<i>es mangelt</i> ,	<i>es kostet</i> , it costs (requires)
<i>es gebricht</i> ,	<i>es kleidet</i> , to fit (become)
<i>es gebührt</i> , it is fit	<i>es nutzt</i> , it profits
<i>es gedeiht</i> , it succeeds	<i>es schwindelt</i> , to be giddy
<i>es gefällt</i> , it pleases	<i>es träumt</i> , to imagine, to fancy
<i>es gehört</i> , it belongs	<i>es ziemt</i> , it is fit

(b) With the accusative.

<i>es ängstiget</i> , it alarms	<i>es hungert</i> , to be hungry
<i>es ärgert</i> , it vexes	<i>es jammert</i> , it grieves
<i>es befremdet</i> , it surprises	<i>es juckt</i> , it itches
<i>es betrifft</i> , it concerns	<i>es kommt an</i> , it depends
<i>es befällt</i> , it befalls	<i>es kränkt</i> , it grieves
<i>es betrübt</i> , it grieves	<i>es kümmert</i> , it concerns
<i>es dauert</i> , it lasts	<i>es schläfert</i> , to be sleepy
<i>es durstet</i> , to be thirsty	<i>es schmerzt</i> , it pains
<i>es ergötzt</i> , it amuses	<i>es sticht</i> , it pricks
<i>es freut</i> , it rejoices	<i>es verlangt</i> , to long
<i>es friert</i> , it freezes	<i>es verdrieszt</i> , it vexes
<i>es geht an</i> , it concerns	<i>es wundert</i> , it astonishes
<i>es gelüstert</i> , to covet	<i>es ziert</i> , it adorns
<i>es gereut</i> , to be sorry	<i>es gibt</i> , it is, there are

(c) The dative or accusative, or both, require:

<i>es dünkt</i> , it seems	<i>es ekelt</i> , it disgusts
<i>es dünkt</i> , it appears	<i>es gilt</i> , it depends
<i>es schaudert</i> , it shudders	

I dream. Note that these verbs are only used in the third person singular ; yet they may express plurality by placing the second pronoun in the plural ; thus we can say—*es hungert uns*, we are hungry ; *es freut uns*, we are glad ; *es träumt uns*, we dream.

RULE 76.—All verbs used in the reflective form take in their compound tenses the auxiliary verb *haben*, and have their second pronouns either in the dative or in the accusative form, according to the government of the verb.

The following is the model conjugation of reflective verbs :

WITH THE DATIVE.⁷²

sich schmeicheln (to flatter oneself.)

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present.

I flatter myself

ich schmeichle mir
du schmeichelst dir
er schmeichelt sich
wir schmeicheln uns
ihr schmeichelt euch
sie schmeicheln sich

If I flatter myself

dasz ich mir schmeichle
dasz du dir schmeichelest
dasz er sich schmeichle
dasz wir uns schmeichelen
dasz ihr euch schmeichelet
dasz sie sich schmeichelen

2. Imperfect.

I flattered myself

ich schmeichelte mir
du schmeicheltest dir
er &c.

If I flattered myself

dasz ich mir schmeiohelte
dasz du dir schmeicheltest
&c., &c.

REMARK 72.—The dative take—*sich ausreden*, to excuse oneself ; *sich anmassen*, to assume ; *sich aussuchen*, to select ; *sich einbilden*, to imagine ; *sich einprägen*, to enjoin ; *sich erlauben*, to take the liberty ; *sich getrauen*, to dare ; *sich herausnehmen*, to presume ; *sich raten*, to advise oneself ; *sich vornehmen*, to purpose ; *sich vorstellen*, to imagine ; *sich zueignen*, to impute ; *sich zutrauen*, to confide ; and all the verbs contained in (a) of Remark 71.

3. Perfect.

I have been flattering myself	If I have been flattering myself
<i>ich habe mir geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz ich mir</i> } <i>habe</i>
<i>du hast dir geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz du dir</i> } <i>habest</i>
<i>er hat sich geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz er sich</i> } <i>habe</i>
<i>wir haben uns geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz wir uns</i> } <i>haben</i>
<i>ihr habt euch geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz ihr euch</i> } <i>habet</i>
<i>sie haben sich geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz sie sich</i> } <i>haben</i>

4. Pluperfect.

I had flattered myself	If I had flattered myself
<i>ich hatte mir geschmeichelt</i>	<i>dasz ich mir geschmeichelt</i>
<i>du hattest dir geschmeichelt</i>	<i>hätte</i>
<i>er &c.</i>	<i>dasz du dir geschmeichelt</i>
	<i>hättest</i>
	<i>dasz &c.</i>

5. Future.

I shall or will flatter myself	If I shall or will, &c.
<i>ich werde mir schmeicheln</i>	<i>dasz ich mir schmeicheln</i>
<i>du wirst dir &c.</i>	<i>werde</i>
	<i>dasz du dir &c.</i>

6. Past Future.

I shall or will have flattered myself	If I shall or will have flattered myself
<i>ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben</i>	<i>dasz ich mir geschmeichelt haben werde</i>
<i>du wirst dir &c., &c.</i>	<i>dasz du dir &c., &c.</i>

III. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. flatter thyself	P. flatter yourselves
<i>schmeichle dir.</i>	<i>schmeichelt euch.</i>

IV. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. to flatter oneself, *sich schmeicheln.*

Past. to have flattered oneself, *sich geschmeichelt haben.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. flattering oneself, *sich schmeichelnd.*

Past. flattered, *geschmeichelt.*

WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.⁷³*sich freuen* (to rejoice.)

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present.

I rejoice

*ich freue mich**du freust dich**er freut sich**wir freuen uns**ihr freut euch**sie freuen sich*

If I rejoice

*dass ich mich freue**dass du dich freuest**dass er sich freue**dass wir uns freuen**dass ihr euch freuet**dass sie sich freuen*

2. Imperfect.

I rejoiced

*ich freute mich**&c., &c.*

If I rejoiced

*dass ich mich freute**&c., &c.*

3. Perfect.

I have rejoiced

*ich habe mich gefreut**du hast dich &c.*

If I have rejoiced

*dass ich mich gefreut habe**dass du dich &c.*

REMARK 73.—The accusative take:

(a) Purely active verbs, as—*achten*, to esteem; *ehren*, to honour; *lieben*, to love; *mäßigen*, to moderate; *retten*, to save; *stoszen*, to push; *schlagen*, to beat; *verwundern*, to astonish, &c., &c.

(b) Neuter verbs used actively, as—*arbeiten*, to work; *gehen*, to walk; *laufen*, to run; *lassen*, to permit; *schreiben*, to write; *stehen*, to stand; *sitzen*, to sit, &c., &c.

(c) Purely reflexive verbs, as—*sich ärgern*, to be vexed; *sich bedienen*, to use; *sich bemächtigen*, to seize; *sich berauben*, to deprive oneself; *sich bedenken*, to remember; *sich bemeistern*, to master; *sich entschlieszen*, to decide; *sich erinnern*, to remember; *sich entsinnen*, to recollect; *sich erkundigen*, to inquire; *sich melden*, to announce; *sich rächen* to avenge; *sich schämen*, to be ashamed; *sich sehnen*, to long for; *sich trösten*, to console oneself; *sich weigern*, to be unwilling, &c., and all verbs contained in (b) of Remark 71.

4. *Pluperfect.*

I had rejoiced
ich hatte mich gefreut
du hattest dich &c.

If I had rejoiced
dasz ich mich gefreut hätte
dasz du dich &c.

5. *Future.*

I shall or will rejoice
ich werde mich freuen
du wirst dich &c.

If I shall or will rejoice
dasz ich mich freuen werde
dasz du dich &c.

6. *Past Future.*

I shall or will have rejoiced
ich werde mich gefreut haben
du wirst dich &c.

If I shall or will have rejoiced
dasz ich mich gefreut haben
werde
dasz du dich &c.

III. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rejoice (thou), *freue dich.* | Rejoice (ye), *freut euch.*

IV. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To rejoice, *sich freuen.*

Past. To have rejoiced, *sich gefreut haben.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Rejoicing, *sich freuend.* *Past.* Rejoiced, *gefrent.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

RULE 77.—Impersonal verbs are only used in the third person singular in each tense and mood. They always have the indefinite pronoun *es* (it) as nominative, and take in their compound tenses the auxiliary verb *haben*.⁷⁴

REMARK 74.—*es ist* (it is, there is,) and *es geschieht* (it happens), are, by exception, conjugated with *sein*; as—*es ist geschehen, es war gewesen, &c., &c.*

RULE 78.—Impersonal verbs in German are :

(A) Verbs used impersonally by their nature, as :

<i>es regnet</i> , it rains	<i>es donnert</i> , it thunders
<i>es schneit</i> , it snows	<i>es hagelt</i> , it hails
<i>es friert</i> , it freezes	<i>es thaut</i> , it thaws
<i>es rieselt</i> , it drizzles	<i>es blitzt</i> , it lightens, &c.

(B) The verb *sein* and *geben* in the following (and such like) idiomatic expressions :

<i>Es ist warm</i> [<i>kalt</i>].	It is warm [cold] weather.
<i>Es ist Jemand hier gewesen</i> .	Some one has been here.
<i>Es ist windig</i> .	It is windy.
<i>Es ist staubig</i> .	It is dusty.
<i>Es ist schönes Wetter</i> .	It is fine weather.
<i>Es ist mir bange</i> .	I am afraid.
<i>Es ist mir übel</i> .	I am ill.
<i>Es ist mir lieb</i> .	I am glad
<i>Es ist mir warm</i> [<i>kalt</i>].	I am warm [cold].
<i>Es ist Zeit</i> .	It is time.
<i>Es ist zwei Uhr</i> .	It is two o'clock.
<i>Es war einmal ein König</i> .	There was once a king.
<i>Es sind nun fünf Jahre</i> . ⁷⁵	It is now five years.
<i>Es waren ihrer drei</i> .	There were three of them.
<i>Es gibt hier viele Arme</i> .	Here are many poor.
<i>Es wird dieses Jahr kein Obst geben</i> .	There will be no fruit this year.
<i>Da wird es Schläge geben</i> .	There will be blows.
<i>Da hat es kein Geld gegeben</i> .	There was no money.
<i>Was gibt's ?</i>	What is the matter ?
<i>Was gibt's neues ?</i>	What news ?

REMARK 75.—When the substantive or pronoun following the impersonal *to be* is in the plural, use *es sind* instead of *es ist*; as—*es sind drei Damen und zwei Herren da*, there are three ladies and two gentlemen; *es sind sechs Jahre*, it is six years ago.

(c) A great many impersonal verbs, used reflectively, governing the dative and the accusative cases. (See Rule 75.)

(d) Verbs always used impersonally in German ;
as—

<i>es geschieht</i> ⁷⁴	} it happens	<i>es scheint</i> , it seems
<i>es ereignet sich</i>		<i>es schickt sich</i> , it is suitable
<i>es versteht sich</i> , it is understood		<i>es trägt sich zu</i> , it happens &c., &c.

RULE 79.—The following is the conjugation of impersonal verbs:—

<i>geben</i> (to be)	Root (<i>geb.</i>)
I. INDICATIVE MOOD.	II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
	1. <i>Present.</i>
There is, <i>es gibt</i>	| If there be, <i>dasz es gebe</i>
	2. <i>Imperfect.</i>
There was, <i>es gab</i>	| If there were, <i>dasz es gäbe</i>
	3. <i>Perfect.</i>
There has been (was) <i>es hat gegeben</i>	| If there have been <i>dasz es gegeben habe</i>
	4. <i>Pluperfect.</i>
There had been <i>es hatte gegeben</i>	| If there had been <i>dasz es gegeben hätte</i>
	5. <i>Future.</i>
There will be <i>es wird geben</i>	| If there will be <i>dasz es geben werde</i>
	6. <i>Past Future.</i>
There will have been <i>es wird gegeben haben</i>	| If there will have been <i>dasz es gegeben haben werde</i>
III. IMPERATIVE.	
Wanting.	
IV. INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres. to give, geben</i>	| <i>Past. wanting.</i>
	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres. wanting</i>	| <i>Past. given, gegeben.</i>

DERIVED VERBS.

RULE 80.—Derived verbs must not be mistaken for compound verbs. They are simply formed of a verb with one of the inseparable prefixes *be*, *ge*, *ent*, *emp*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, *misz*, or the prepositions *hinter* or *wider*.⁷⁸ They are conjugated in the same way as

REMARK 76.—(a) *be*, evidently an abbreviation of *bei* (en, upon, to, in), implies a provision or addition to the original verb, as—*bearbeiten*, to elaborate; *bebauen*, to cultivate; *bedecken*, to protect; *befolgen*, to obey, &c.

(b) *ge* answers in many verbs to the Latin *con*, *co*, as—*gebrauchen*, to employ; *gefallen*, to please; *geleiten*, to escort, &c.

(c) *ent* expresses off, depriving of, taking away, beginning, original ting, proceeding from, &c., as—*enterben*, to disinherit; *entlassen*, to dismiss; *entwerfen*, to project; *entstehen*, to originate.

(d) *er* implies acquisition, obtaining, producing change from one state to another, as—*errathen*, to guess; *erbeten* to obtain by prayer; *erheben*, to lift up.

(e) *ver* implies destruction, error, loss, or change, as—*verbrennen*, to burn; *verkennen*, to mistake; *verschlafen*, to sleep away.

(f) *zer* means destruction, disunion, dispersion, separation of parts; as—*zerfallen*, to fall to pieces; *zergliedern*, to dismember; *zerschlagen*, to break to pieces.

(g) *misz*, formerly a substantive, used for anything bad or faulty, implies now the contrary of what the simple verb expresses; as—*miszdrucken*, to misprint; *miszempfehlen*, to disrecommend; *miszglücken*, to have bad luck.

(h) *hinter*, a preposition signifying behind, after, back; as—*hinterbringen*, to inform secretly; *hintergehen*, to deceive; *hinterlassen*, to bequeath.

(i) *wider*, a preposition implying: against, in opposition to, contrary to; as—*widerrathen*, to advise against; *widerrufen*, to revoke; *widersetzen*, to resist.

These remarks are only intended for advanced pupils, or as a reference. Let the pupil write out and explain the meaning of every verb, from which the derived verbs of the following examples are formed.

simple verbs, with the exception of the past participle, which does not take the initial *ge*. (See Remark 64.)

EXAMPLES.

	Past Part.	
<i>belehren</i> , to inform	<i>belehrt</i>	
<i>gehörchen</i> , to obey	<i>gehört</i>	
<i>entfernen</i> , to remove	<i>entfernt</i>	
<i>empören</i> , to revolt	<i>empört</i>	
<i>erröthen</i> , to blush	<i>erröthet</i>	
<i>verloben</i> , to betroth	<i>verlobt</i>	
<i>zerbrechen</i> , to break to pieces	<i>zerbrochen</i>	
<i>miszkennen</i> , to know wrongly	<i>miszkannt</i>	
<i>hintergehen</i> , to deceive	<i>hintergangen</i>	
<i>widerstehen</i> , to resist	<i>widerstanden</i>	

COMPOUND SEPARABLE VERBS.

RULE 81.—Compound verbs are formed from simple verbs preceded by a noun, an adjective, a preposition, or an adverb. They are :

- (A) Separable.
- (B) Inseparable.
- (C) Separable or inseparable (according to their signification.)

RULE 82.—Separable compound verbs are of two kinds :

- (A) Separable in the past participle ONLY.
- (B) Separable in the whole of the indicative and imperative moods, the past participle and the infinitive.

RULE 83.—Compound verbs separable in the past participle ONLY are the following verbs, composed of *misz* and the simple verbs :

<i>miszbieten</i> , to underbid	<i>miszheirathen</i> , to misally
<i>miszdenken</i> , to err	<i>miszklingen</i> , to be discordant

miszdünken, to have doubt

miszernen, to make a bad
harvest

miszfühlen, to feel wrongly

miszgebären, to miscarry

miszgreifen, to take wrongly

miszstimmen, to tune wrongly

miszschildern, to misrepresent

misztretten, to step falsely

miszurtheilen, to misjudge

miszziemen, to be unbecoming

miszzieren, to suit ill

They all take the participle *ge* between *misz* and the verb. (Write out the past participles of all these verbs.)

RULE 84.—Compound verbs separable in the whole of the indicative and imperative moods, the past participle, and the infinitive, are :

(A) Verbs composed of simple verbs and the following separable adverbs or prepositions ; *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *dar*, *ein*, *fort*, *her*, *hin*, *mit*, *nach*, *nieder*, *ob*, *vor*, *weg*, *zu*, *zurück* ;* as—

abschreiben, to copy

ausgehen, to go out

mittheilen, to communicate

zugeben, to allow, &c., &c.

(B) Verbs composed of a noun which, if placed after it, could be its direct object (accusative case) ; as—

preisgeben, to expose

stattfinden, to take place

haushalten, to keep house

&c., &c.

The following is the model for their conjugation :

abschreiben (to copy).

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Root (*abschreib*).

II. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present*.

I copy, do copy, or am copying

ich schreib' ab

du schreibst ab

er schreibt ab

wir schreiben ab

ihr schreibt ab

sie schreiben ab

If I copy

dasz ich abschreibe

dasz du abschreibest

dasz er abschreibe

dasz wir abschreiben

dasz ihr abschreibet

dasz sie abschreiben

* Write out and explain the meaning of each of these adverbs and prepositions, and state what they may imply when prefixed to a verb.

2. Imperfect.

I copied, or was copying

ich schrieb ab
du schriebs ab
er schrieb ab
wir schrieben ab
ihr schriebs ab
sie schrieben ab

If I copied

dasz ich abschriebe
dasz du abschriebs
dasz er abschriebe
dasz wir abschrieben
dasz ihr abschriebs
dasz sie abschrieben

3. Perfect.

I have copied

ich habe abgeschrieben
du hast &c., &c.

If I have copied

dasz ich abgeschrieben habe
dasz du &c., &c.

4. Pluperfect.

I had copied

ich hatte abgeschrieben
du hattest &c., &c.

If I had copied

dasz ich abgeschrieben hätte
dasz du &c., &c.

5. Future.

I shall or will copy

ich werde abschreiben
du wirst &c., &c.

If I shall or will copy

dasz ich abschreiben werde
dasz du &c., &c.

6. Past Future.

I shall have copied

ich werde abgeschrieben haben
dasz du &c., &c.

If I shall have copied

dasz ich abgeschrieben haben
werde
dasz du &c., &c.

III. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. copy (thou), schreib' ab.

Pl. copy (ye), schreibt ab.

IV. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. to copy, abzuschreiben.

Past. to have copied, abgeschrieben haben.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. copying, abschreibend.

Past. copied, abgeschrieben.

Conjugate in the same way—

ausgehen, to go out

zurückschicken, to send back

abreisen, to depart

darbieten, to offer

niederfallen, to fall down

aufstehen, to get up

INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS.

RULE 85.—Inseparable compound verbs are of two kinds :

1. Those that take the prefix *ge* in the past participle.

2. Those that take no prefix at all.

RULE 86.—Inseparable compound verbs taking the prefix *ge* in their past participles are :

(A) Verbs composed of a noun which, if placed after it, could not be its direct object (accusative case) ; as—

handhaben, to handle

muthmaßen, to guess

lustwandeln, to walk for pleasure

rathschlagen, to counsel, &c.

(B) The following verbs :

miszachten, to despise

miszbilligen, to disapprove

miszdeuten, to misinterpret

frühstücken, to breakfast

antworten, to answer.

miszbrauchen, to abuse

miszhandeln, to illtreat

urtheilen, to judge

wahrsagen, to prophecy

RULE 87.—Inseparable compound verbs not taking any prefix in the past participle are those that are formed from derived verbs with one of the following prepositions prefixed to them—*an*, *ab*, *aus*, *auf*, *ein*, *mit*, *nach*, *vor*, *zu* ; as—

abverdienen, to work off

anerkennen, to acknowledge

ausersehen, to choose

aufstehen, to rise up

einverstehen, to agree with

mitvertheidigen, to join in one's defence

nachbedenken, to consider later on

vorenthalten, to keep back

zubereiten, to prepare, &c.

They are conjugated like any other verb of the kind to which they belong.

SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS.

RULE 88.—Compound verbs, separable or inseparable in their indicative and imperative moods, the past participle, and the infinitive, are verbs composed with one of the following prepositions :—*durch* (through), *um* (around), *unter* (under), *über* (over), and *wieder* (again). They are :—

(A) Separable if the accent (and consequently the meaning) lies on the preposition, and then they are treated like separable verbs of Rule 84.

(B) Inseparable if the accent (and of course the meaning) lies on the verb, and then they are treated like inseparable compound verbs of Rule 87.

EXAMPLES.

Separable.

umfahren, to drive round
durchbrechen, to break through
durchstreichen, to cross out
übergehen, to go round
überlaufen, to flow over
umpflanzen, to transplant
umgehen, to revolve
unterhalten, to hold under
unterstehen, to stand under
überführen, to lead over
übersetzen, to cross
übertragen, to carry over
wiederholen, to fetch back

Inseparable.

umfahren, to drive over
durchbrechen, to pierce
durchstreichen, to roam over
übergehen, to run over
überlaufen, to importune
umpflanzen, to plant round
umgehen, to avoid
unterhalten, to maintain
unterstehen, to dare
überführen, to convict
übersetzen, to translate
übertragen, to charge with
wiederholen, to repeat, &c., &c.

CHAPTER IX.

OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.⁷⁷

RULE 89.—The infinitive, considered by itself, has neither number, gender, nor person, and expresses a general and vague idea of an action; but in conjunction with other words its functions are manifold and of great importance. It is used by itself and without *zu* :

(A) As the subject of a sentence ; as—

<i>Viel trinken is ungesund.</i>	Much drinking is hurtful.
<i>Irren ist menschlich.</i>	To err is human.
<i>Regieren ist eine schwere Kunst.</i>	To govern is a difficult task.
<i>Essen, trinken, schlafen, und gehen, sind dem menschlichen Leben nothwendig.</i>	Eating, drinking, sleeping, and walking, are necessary to human life.

(B) As the object of a sentence before or after the following verbs:⁷⁸ *dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, sollen, werden, and wollen*;⁷⁹ as—

<i>Er hat nicht ausgehen dürfen.</i>	He was forbidden to go out.
<i>Er musz es ihn thun lassen.</i>	He must let him do it.
<i>Wir wollen ausgehen.</i>	We wish to go out.

REMARK 77.—Neither the infinitive nor the participles form a separate part of speech, as can be seen in the 2nd Rule; but their use being of very great importance in the language, I have thought it advisable to devote a separate chapter to this part of grammar.

REMARK 78.—In simple tenses the infinitive is placed after the verb, in compound ones before; as—*Er musz arbeiten, Er hat arbeiten müssen.*

(c) As the object of a sentence after the verbs *heissen, helfen, hören, lehren, lernen, sehen, fühlen*;⁷⁹

as—

<i>er lernt lesen.</i>	He learns reading.
<i>ich sah ihn tanzen.</i>	I saw him dancing.
<i>er hiesz mich gehen.</i>	He told me to go.
<i>sie half mir arbeiten.</i>	She helped me to work.

(d) As the object of the following verbs, used conjointly :

<i>bleiben, to remain, with</i>	{	<i>leben, to live</i>	<i>kleben, to stick</i>
		<i>stecken, to remain</i>	<i>wohnen, to dwell</i>
		<i>sitzen, to sit</i>	<i>liegen, to lie</i>
		<i>stehen, to stand</i>	<i>hängen, to hang up</i>
<i>finden, to find, with</i>		<i>schlafen, to sleep</i>	<i>liegen, to lie</i>
<i>gehen, to go, with</i>	{	<i>schlafen, to sleep</i>	<i>spaziren, to walk</i>
		<i>betteln, to beg</i>	
<i>haben, to have, with</i>		<i>stehen, to stand</i>	
<i>fahren, to drive, }</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>spaziren, to walk</i>	
<i>reiten, to ride, }</i>			
<i>legen, to lie down, with</i>		<i>schlafen, to sleep</i>	
<i>machen, to make, with</i>	{	<i>lachen, to laugh</i>	
		<i>weinen, to weep</i>	

EXAMPLES.

<i>Bleiben Sie sitzen.</i>	Remain sitting.
<i>Er soll leben bleiben.</i>	Let him live.
<i>Ich bin spaziren gefahren.</i>	I have been out for a drive.
<i>Wir sind spaziren geritten.</i>	We have been out for a ride.
<i>Er hat sein Geld auf Zinsen stehen.</i>	He has out his money on interest.

REMARK 79.—Observe that *heissen, helfen, hören, and sehen*, as well as *dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, and sollen*, having an infinitive as their object, take in their perfect and pluperfect tenses the infinitive, and not the past participle; as—

<i>Ich habe ihn lesen hören.</i>	I have heard him reading.
<i>Er hat mich kommen heissen.</i>	He told me to come.
<i>Er hätte darauf rechnen können.</i>	He could have relied upon that.
<i>Wir hatten ihm arbeiten helfen.</i>	We had helped him to work.

Du wirst ihn weinen machen. You will make him cry.
Er hat sich schlafen gelegt. He has laid down.

RULE 90.—In all other cases the infinitive is preceded by the preposition *zu*, and it answers to the Latin SUPINE and GERUND; as—

Er ging ihn zu sehen, He went to see him.
Du bist geneigt mich zu tadeln. Thou art inclined to blame me.
Wir hoffen morgen einen Brief zu erhalten. We hope to receive a letter to-morrow.
Ich fürchte es ihm zu sagen. I am afraid to tell it him.
Sie hat noch ihre Aufgabe zu machen. She has still her exercise to do.
Es ist Zeit zu schlafen. It is time to go to sleep.
Diese Regel ist leicht zu behalten. This rule can be easily retained.

RULE 91.—When we desire to express particularly the object or aim of the action we add *um* to the *zu* before an infinitive;⁸⁰ as—

Um Anderen zu helfen, opferte er Alles auf. To help others, he sacrificed everything.
Der Mensch lebt nicht um zu essen, sondern er iszt um zu leben. Man does not live to eat, but he eats to live.
Ich komme, um mit Ihnen zu sprechen. I come to speak to you.

RULE 92.—After *ohne* (without) and *anstatt* (instead) use the infinitive with *zu* instead of the present participle in English; as—

Ohne Abschied zu nehmen. Without taking leave.
Ohne es zu sehen. Without seeing it.
Anstatt es zu thun. Instead of doing it.
Anstatt es zu sagen. Instead of saying it.

REMARK 80.—Observe, that whenever you can use (as in the above examples) the conjunction **IN ORDER TO**, you must use *um zu* in German.

RULE 93.—Participles form no part of speech of themselves, they being merely derived from the verb, and partaking of the nature of an adjective. They can easily be transformed into an adjective by adding to them *er, e, es*; as—*lobender-e-es, gelobter-e-es*.

RULE 94.—There are in German only two participles:⁸¹ the present (ending in *end*, and having an active or neuter meaning), as—*singend, habend, gehend*; and the past (ending in *t* or *en*, and having an active or passive meaning), as—*gesungen, gehabt, gegangen*.

RULE 95.—The present participle is seldom used in German except as an adjective, viz., before a noun, when it agrees with it in number and gender; as—

Der sterbende Greis.

The dying old man.

Die leidende Menschheit.

Suffering humanity.

Unterhaltende Bücher.

Amusing books.

RULE 96.—However, the present participle is employed sometimes in German, to unite two phrases into one; as—

Zitternd, sagte er mir....

Trembling, he said to me....

*Erröthend vor Scham, verliesz er
das Haus.*

He left the house, blushing
with shame.

*Lachend, erzählte er mir seine
Abentheuer.*

Laughing, he told me his ad-
ventures.

RULE 97.—To render into German the present participle of foreign languages, various circumlocutions

REMARK 81.—Some grammarians make a third participle—the future; but as it is merely the descriptive form of the present participle, preceded by *zu*, it is improperly called a participle, and it is used only to replace the supine and the gerund of the Latin; as,

Der zu schreibende Brief.

The letter to be written.

Die zu hoffende Nachricht.

The news to be expected.

Die zu erlangende Stelle.

The situation to be got.

must be substituted by means of relative pronouns or the conjunctions, *weil, nachdem, als, da, wenn, indem*; as—

Da ich krank war, ging ich zur Seeküste Being ill, I went to the seaside.

Jemand, der bei Ihrem Hause vorbeiging, sah Ihre Schwester. Some one, passing your house, saw your sister.

Da ich noch jung war, ging ich in die Schule. Being still young, I went to school.

Weil ich kein Geld hatte, konnte ich dieses Haus nicht kaufen. Not having had any money, I could not buy this house.

Er hat sich beim Tanzen erkältet. He got cold with dancing.

RULE 98.—The past participle is used—

(A) To form compound tenses of a verb; as—*ich habe gelesen, ich bin geritten, er ist gegangen.*

(B) As an adjective, when it is placed before and agrees with the noun (to which it belongs) in number and gender; as—

Der erhaltene Brief. The received letter.

Das beendigte Werk. The finished work.

Das bebaute Feld. The cultivated field.

(C) To replace sometimes the imperative, the infinitive, and even the present participle; as—

Getrunken, gespielt! Let us drink, let us play!

Das heiszt gesungen! That I call singing!

Er kam gesprungen. He came jumping.

Sie kommen gefahren. They are coming in a coach.

(D) In the poetical style the past participle is used to unite two or more sentences, in order to render the expression more precise or more elegant; as—

Von seinen Freunden verrathen,

Von seinen Feinden verfolgt,

Entfloh Themistokles nach Persien.

Betrayed by his friends, persecuted by his enemies, Themistocles fled to Persia.

*Die Unschuld ist des Lebens Glück:
Einmal verscherzt und aufgegeben,
Verlöst sie uns im ganzen Leben,
Und keine Reus bringt sie zurück.*

Innocence is the happiness of life: trifled away and abandoned, it forsakes us for the whole of our lives, and no repentance can recall it.

CHAPTER X.

OF ADVERBS.

RULE 99.—An adverb is an invariable part of speech modifying either a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as—*Der Mann ist weise, der Mann denkt weise, ein sehr weiser Mann, der Mann denkt sehr weise.*

RULE 100.—There are seven different kinds of adverbs, viz. :—

- (A) Adverbs of quality; as—*gut, böse, stark, &c.*
- (B) Adverbs of negation, affirmation, mood, and doubt; as—*ja, nein, wirklich, kaum, &c., &c.*
- (C) Adverbs of quantity; as—*viel, wenig, &c., &c.*
- (D) Adverbs of interrogation; as—*wo? warum? &c., &c.*
- (E) Adverbs of time; as—*heute, morgen, &c., &c.*
- (F) Adverbs of comparison; as—*sehr, gar, &c., &c.*
- (G) Adverbs of place; as—*hier, dort, &c., &c.*

RULE 101.—Adverbs of quality are simply adjectives placed after the verb; as—*Gott ist allwissend; das Kind ist krank; die Stadt ist sehr groß.*

RULE 102.—Adverbs of negation, affirmation, mood, and doubt, are:—

<i>ja</i> , yes	<i>wahrlich</i> , truly
<i>nein</i> , } no ^{ca}	<i>unstreitig</i> , undeniable
<i>nicht</i> , }	<i>allerdings</i> , certainly
<i>kaum</i> , scarcely	<i>keineswegs</i> , nowise
<i>fürwahr</i> , } indeed	<i>durchaus nicht</i> , not at all
<i>wirklich</i> , }	<i>unglaublich</i> , imperfect
<i>vielleicht</i> , perhaps	<i>nothwendig</i> , necessary
<i>gewiss</i> , } certainly	<i>vermuthlich</i> , most likely
<i>sicherlich</i> , }	<i>unfehlbar</i> , }
<i>wohl</i> , well, good	<i>unausbleiblich</i> , } without fail
<i>wahrscheinlich</i> , probably	&c., &c.

RULE 103.—Adverbs of quantity are :

<i>viel</i> , much	<i>so viel</i> , so much
<i>wenig</i> , little (few)	<i>etwas</i> , something
<i>mehr</i> , more	<i>nichts</i> , nothing
<i>genug</i> , enough	<i>gar nichts</i> , nothing at all
<i>wie viel</i> ? how much ?	&c., &c.

Observe that these adverbs stand before nouns or pronouns, but they always remain invariable ; as—*viel Geld* ; *eben so viel Freunde*, &c.

REMARK 82.—The negation *nicht* must not be used :

(a) With verbs that contain a negative meaning in themselves ; as—*verbieten*, to forbid ; *läugnen*, to deny ; *verhindern*, to hinder ; *versagen*, to refuse ; *sich hüten*, to beware ; *zweifeln*, to doubt.

(b) With another negation ; as—*ich liebe nicht keinen Wein*, is wrong ; to be correct we must say, *ich liebe nicht Wein*, or *ich liebe keinen Wein*.

(c) With the particle *um* (an abbreviation of *ohne*, without) which is prefixed to some adjectives and adverbs of quality and mood, to avoid the use of *nicht* ; thus we can say—

<i>glücklich</i> happy	<i>unglücklich</i> , unhappy
<i>höflich</i> , polite	<i>unhöflich</i> , rude
<i>möglich</i> , possible	<i>unmöglich</i> , impossible
<i>angenehm</i> , agreeable	<i>unangenehm</i> , disagreeable

RULE 104.—Adverbs of interrogation are :

<i>wo</i> ?	} where ?	<i>ob</i> ? whether ?
<i>etwa</i> ?		<i>woher</i> ? wherefrom ?
<i>wie</i> ? how ?		<i>wie so</i> ? how so ?
<i>wenn</i> ? when ?		<i>warum</i> ? why ?

And some of the interrogative pronominal locutions enumerated in Remark 57.

RULE 105.—Adverbs of time are :

<i>einmal</i> , once	<i>bis</i> , until
<i>irgendeinmal</i> , sometimes	<i>bis jetzt</i> , until now
<i>jemaß</i> , ever	<i>vorlängst</i> , } a short time ago
<i>nie</i> , }	<i>jüngst</i> , }
<i>niemals</i> , } never	<i>gestern</i> , yesterday
<i>immer</i> , always	<i>forthin</i> , forthwith
<i>nimmermehr</i> , nevermore	<i>nächstens</i> , soon
<i>jetzt</i> , now	<i>einst</i> , once
<i>heute</i> , to-day	<i>dereinst</i> , at that time
<i>dann</i> , then	<i>gleich</i> , directly
<i>wann</i> , when	<i>Abends</i> , in the evening
<i>sonst</i> , otherwise	<i>Morgens</i> , in the morning
<i>nun</i> , now	<i>morgen</i> , to-morrow
<i>vorher</i> , before	<i>spät</i> , late
<i>ehemals</i> , formerly	<i>früh</i> , early
<i>stets</i> , continually	<i>je und je</i> , by degrees
<i>täglich</i> , daily	<i>allezeit</i> , always
<i>jährlich</i> , yearly	<i>plötzlich</i> , suddenly
<i>unaufhörlich</i> , without ceasing	<i>je zuweilen</i> , now and then
<i>immerfort</i> , continually	<i>mehrentheils</i> , very often
<i>oft</i> , often	<i>seit</i> , }
<i>selten</i> , seldom	<i>seitdem</i> , } since
<i>bisweilen</i> , }	<i>nachdem</i> , after that
<i>manchmal</i> , } sometimes	<i>dahin</i> , thereto

And all multiplicative numbers. (See Rules 39, 40, 41, 42, and 43.)

RULE 106.—Adverbs of comparison, serving to modify adjectives only, are :

<i>sehr</i> , }	very	<i>ziemlich</i> , pretty	
<i>gar</i> , }		<i>fast</i> , almost	
<i>garzu</i> , too		<i>kaum</i> , scarcely	
<i>gar sehr</i> , very (indeed)		<i>etwas</i> , a little	
<i>überaus</i> , above all		<i>je...je</i> }	the...the
<i>unendlich</i> , endlessly		<i>je...desto</i> , }	
<i>ganz</i> , quite		<i>um so viel</i> , by so much	
<i>gänzlich</i> , totally		<i>wie</i> , }	as
<i>ungemein</i> , uncommon		<i>als</i> , }	
<i>besonders</i> , }	especially	<i>gleich</i> }	equally
<i>vorzüglich</i> , }		<i>gleichsam</i> }	
<i>beinahe</i> , almost			

RULE 107.—Adverbs of place are a great many of the pronominal locutions enumerated in Remark 57, also :

<i>hier</i> , here	<i>hierher</i> , this way (here)
<i>von hier</i> , from here	<i>herein</i> , herein (in here)
<i>hieselbst</i> , this very place	<i>dagegen</i> , } on the other hand
<i>überall</i> , everywhere	} against that
<i>nirgends</i> , nowhere	<i>daneben</i> , at the side of
<i>irgends</i> , somewhere	<i>darunter</i> , underneath
<i>drinnen</i> , in there	<i>davor</i> , before that
<i>draußen</i> , out there	<i>dazwischen</i> , betwixt
<i>oben</i> , above	<i>hieran</i> , on that
<i>unten</i> , below	<i>hierauf</i> , thereupon
<i>jenseits</i> , this side	<i>hiemit</i> , herewith
<i>rechts</i> , right	<i>heraus</i> , } out
<i>links</i> , left	<i>hinaus</i> , }
<i>seitwärts</i> , sideways	<i>herüber</i> , } over
<i>weit</i> , broad	<i>hintüber</i> , }
<i>ferne</i> , distant	<i>herauf</i> , } up
<i>nahe</i> , near	<i>hinauf</i> , }
<i>dorthier</i> , from there	<i>herunter</i> , ⁸³ }
<i>hiervon</i> , hereof	<i>hinunter</i> , }
<i>dorthin</i> , to there, thither	<i>herab</i> , } down
	<i>hinab</i> , }

RULE 108.—Some adverbs of time and quantity and all adverbs of quality (see Rule 101) admit of degrees of comparison. The comparative is formed by adding *er* ; and the superlative by adding *sten* or *esten* to the abverb, and prefixing *am* or *aufs* to the superlative ;⁶⁴

as—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>spät</i> (late)	<i>später</i>	<i>am spätesten</i>
<i>oft</i> (often)	<i>öfter</i>	<i>am öftesten</i>
<i>früh</i> (early)	<i>früher</i>	<i>am frühesten</i>
<i>geschwind</i> (quick)	<i>geschwinder</i>	<i>am geschwindesten</i>
	<i>&c., &c., &c.</i>	

REMARK 83.—Adverbs composed of *her* and *hin* must not be mistaken for each other. Observe that *hin* marks always the direction from the speaker (the nominative case of the sentence) to a given object (the accusative case of the sentence), whereas *her* marks an approach from a given point to the speaker; hence *hin* points out a **TERMINUS AD QUUM**, and *her* a **TERMINUS A QUO**. Thus we would say *komme herunter* to a person standing on a hill; and if he wished me to come up, he would say, *komme herauf*. In these sentences it will be observed that *herunter* and *herauf* mean an approach to the speaker from a given point. On the other hand, if he and I do not wish to come to one another, I would say, *ich komme nicht hinauf*; and he would answer, *und ich nicht hinunter*. In these sentences the *hinauf* and *hinunter* imply a direction from the speaker to a given object.

REMARK 84.—The following are exceptions to this rule:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>nahe</i> (near)	<i>näher</i>	<i>am nächsten</i>
<i>bald</i> (soon)	<i>eher</i>	<i>am ehesten</i>
<i>hoch</i> (high)	<i>höher</i>	<i>am höchsten</i>
<i>gern</i> (willingly)	<i>lieber</i>	<i>am liebsten</i>
<i>wenig</i> (little)	<i>minder</i>	<i>am mindesten</i>
<i>viel</i> (much)	<i>mehr</i>	<i>am meisten</i>
<i>auszen</i> (outer)	wanting	<i>am äussersten</i>
<i>innen</i> (inner)	.....	<i>am innersten</i>
<i>oben</i> (upper)	.....	<i>am obersten</i>
<i>unten</i> (under)	.....	<i>am untersten</i>
<i>vorn</i> (before)	.....	<i>am vordersten</i>

CHAPTER XI.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE 109.—Prepositions are invariable, and serve to express the relation of words when it cannot be sufficiently shown by the declensions ; thus in saying, *Karl läuft vor, hinter, nach dem Hunde*, we express by means of three prepositions, *vor*, *hinter*, and *nach* (all three governing the same case), the different relations between *Karl* and *Hund*.

RULE 110.—Every preposition governs a given case ; that is to say, requires the noun or pronoun following it to be put in a particular case : thus we say, *mit mir, anstatt seiner, für meinen Bruder, ohne Tugend, &c.*

RULE 111.—There are five kinds of prepositions :

1. Prepositions requiring the genitive.
2. Prepositions requiring the dative.
3. Prepositions requiring the accusative.
4. Prepositions requiring the genitive and dative.
5. Prepositions requiring the dative and accusative.

RULE 112.—Prepositions requiring the genitive are :⁸⁵

<i>anstatt (statt)</i> , instead of	<i>kraft</i> ,	}	by virtue of
<i>halben</i> or <i>halber</i> , an account of	<i>vermöge</i> ,		

REMARK 85.—(a) *anstatt* (or its abbreviation *statt*) precedes the noun or pronoun ; as—*anstatt seiner, statt seines Vaters* ; but if *statt* be separated from *an*, then *an* precedes the pronoun or noun, and *statt* follows it, being written with a capital letter, as—*an meiner Statt, an des Königs Statt, an meines Vaters Statt*.

(b) *halben* and *halber* are always put after the substantive, and *halber* is used when there is no article or determinative word before the noun ;

<i>ausserhalb</i> , } without	<i>mittelst (mittels)</i> , } by means of
<i>wegen</i> , }	<i>vermittelt</i> , }
<i>innerhalb</i> , within	<i>ungeachtet</i> , notwithstanding
<i>oberhalb</i> , above	<i>unweit</i> , } (near) not far from
<i>unterhalb</i> , below	<i>unfern</i> , }
<i>diesseits</i> , on this side	<i>während</i> , during
<i>jenseits</i> , on that side	<i>laut</i> , according to
<i>um willen</i> , for the sake of	<i>in Betreff</i> , } in favour of
<i>hinsichtlich</i> , }	<i>zu Gunsten</i> , }
<i>rücksichtlich</i> , } with regard to	<i>trotz</i> , in spite of

RULE 113.—Prepositions governing the dative are :⁸⁶

<i>aus</i> , out of (from)	<i>gemäsz</i> , according to
<i>ausser</i> , outside of (besides)	<i>nächst</i> , next to
<i>bei</i> , by, with, near	<i>nebst</i> , with (along with)
<i>entgegen</i> , towards (opposite of)	<i>samt</i> , together with
<i>gegenüber</i> , opposite	<i>seit</i> , since
<i>mit</i> , with	<i>von</i> , from, of, by
<i>nach</i> , to, according to, after	<i>zu</i> , at (to)
<i>binnen</i> , within	<i>zuwider</i> , against (contrary to)

The following verses will facilitate the understanding of the dative :—

Nach dir *schmacht' ich*, zu dir *eil' ich*, du *geliebte Quelle du!*
 Aus dir *schöpf' ich*, bei dir *ruh' ich*, *seh' dem Spiel der Wellen zu.*
 Mit dir *schertz' ich* von dir *lern'ich heiter durch das Leben wallen,*
Angelacht von Frühlingsblumen und begrüzt von Nachtigallen.

as—*deiner Tugend halben; Ehren halber.* These prepositions are contracted with possessive pronouns in the same way as *wegen*. [See (b), Remark 50.]

(c) *wegen* generally follows the noun, but is always placed after possessive pronouns; viz.: *des Geldes wegen*, or *wegen des Geldes*; but *meinewegen, seinetwegen*.

(d) *um willen* is always divided; as—*um des Himmels willen, um seinetwillen*.

(e) *trotz* (preposition) must be distinguished from *Trotz* (noun): the latter one governs the dative; as—*trotz meines Befehles*, but *Trotz dem, der widerspricht*, that is, *Trotz sei geboten dem, der widerspricht*.

REMARK 86.—(a) *aus* must not be used for *ausser*; thus we must

RULE 114.—Prepositions governing the accusative are :⁸⁷

<i>durch</i> , through	<i>ohne</i> ,	} without
<i>für</i> , for (instead of)	<i>sonder</i> ,	
<i>gegen</i> (<i>gen</i>), against (towards)	<i>um</i> , at	
<i>entlang</i> along	<i>wider</i> , against	

say, *ausser Gefahr*, out of danger ; and *aus den Augen*, out of sight. (Observe that *aus* is used in opposition to *in*.)

(b) *zuwider*, *gegenüber*, *entgegen* are put behind the noun : as—*den Gesetzen zuwider*, *mir gegenüber*, *dir entgegen*.

(c) *nach* is put after the noun in some locutions only ; as—*allen Anscheine nach*, *der Zeitung nach*, &c., &c.

(d) *mit* must not be used in conjunction with *samt*, as they both express nearly the same relation : *mit* refers rather to persons, and *samt* to things or plural nouns ; as—*mit seiner Familie*, *der Lehrer sammt seinen Schülern*.

(e) When *mit*, *bei*, *von*, *nach*, *zu* are followed by a substantive without any article or adjective, the noun does not take the *s* (if it should have one according to Rule 11) ; as—*mit Weib und Kind*, *von Tisch und Bett*, *mit Fleisz*, *mit Sack und Pack*, &c., &c.

REMARK 87.—*Für* must not be changed with *vor* ; before the 16th century both of them were used indiscriminately. *Für* is used :—

(a) When it means—instead of some one or of something, or indicating some use, profit, or pleasure ; as—

Ich übernehme für ihn diese Schuld. I take this debt for him.

Du siehst einen Schatten für ein Gespenst. Thou seest a shadow for a ghost.

Er predigte für mich.

He preached for me.

Er belohnt mich für meine Mühe.

He rewards me for my trouble.

(b) To show affection for a person or liking for a thing ; as—

Liebe für Jemanden empfinden.

To feel love for some one.

(c) With verbs that signify a taking for ; as—

Für gewisz halten.

To take it for certain.

Für nützlich halten.

To consider it useful.

Für einen Dummkopf halten.

To take him for a blockhead.

(d) After *was* to ask questions ; as—*Was für Wetter ist es ? Was für ein Mann ist er ? Was für Leute ?*

The use of the accusative case is very forcibly illustrated in the following verses :—

Durch dich ist die Welt mir schön, ohne dich würd' ich sie hassen,
Für dich leb' ich ganz allein, um dich will ich gern erblassen ;
Gegen dich soll kein Verleumder ungestraft sich je vergehen,
Wider dich, kein Feind sich waffnen, ich will dir zur Seite stehn.

RULE 115.—Prepositions governing the genitive and dative cases are :⁸⁸

zufolge, in consequence of, according to, pursuant to
längs, along

ob, { an account of
 { on the other side

(e) In certain expressions, meaning after or implying order; as—*Mann für Mann, Tag für Tag, Schritt für Schritt, Nacht für Nacht*. Also in certain idioms; as—*für diesmal, für Spatz, ich für meinen Theil &c., &c.*

(f) *gen* will be found in poetical works instead of *gegen*; as—*gen Himmel, gen Westen, gen Morgen*.

(g) *sonder* is sometimes used instead of *ohne*; as—*sonder Zweifel, sonder gleichen*.

(h) *Wider* (against) signifies opposition, resistance, and must not be misapprehended *wieder*, which implies repetition (again). Distinguish between *widersprechen* and *wieder sprechen*.

REMARK 88.—(a) *zufolge* governs the genitive if placed before the noun, and the dative if placed after: as—*zufolge meines Befehles*: but with the dative, *meinem Befehle zufolge*.

(b) *längs* (along) can be used with the genitive or the dative indiscriminately. The dative is considered by some authors preferable.

Längs dem Ufer hinfahren.

To ride along the bank.

Längs des Weges hingehen.

To go along the way.

(c) *ob*, implying on account of, governs the genitive; as—

Den sie ob seines Muthes ehrten.

Whom they honoured on account of his courage.

But implying on the other side, it takes the dative; as—

Das Land ob der Ems.

The country over the Ems.

RULE 116.—Prepositions governing the dative and accusative are :⁸⁹

<i>an</i> , at	<i>über</i> , over (above)
<i>auf</i> , on	<i>unter</i> , under, below, among
<i>hinter</i> , behind	<i>vor</i> , before (of)
<i>in</i> , in	<i>zwischen</i> , between
<i>neben</i> , by the side of	

They require the dative when the verb by which they are governed denotes a state of rest, continuance or abode in one place, and when it answers to the questions—*wo* ? (where ?) *woran* ? (whereon ?) *worauf* ? (whereupon ?) *an wem* ? (on whom ?) ; as—

Er ist in der Stube. (Wo ist er ?)

Er steht an der Wand. (Wo steht er ?)

Er arbeitet an seiner Aufgabe. (Woran arbeitet er ?)

Er sitzt auf dem Stuhle. (Worauf sitzt er ?)

They require the accusative when the verb by which they are governed denotes a motion or direction towards an object, and answers to the questions—*wohin* ? (where to ?) *an wen* ? (to whom ?) ; as—

Ich gehe in die Stube. (Wohin geh' ich ?)

Ich stelle mich an die Wand. (Wohin stelle ich mich ?)

Er setzt sich auf den Stuhl. (Wohin setzt er sich ?)

Ich schreibe an deinen Bruder. (An wen schreib' ich ?)

RULE 117.—Some prepositions are contracted with the article, on account of euphony ; they are :

<i>am</i> (on the)	instead of	<i>an dem</i>
<i>ans</i> (on the)	„	<i>an das</i>
<i>im</i> (in the)	„	<i>in dem</i>
<i>ins</i> (into the)	„	<i>in das</i>

REMARK 89.—Distinguish between *zwischen* and *unter* : the former means the space between two things, as *zwischen ihm und mir* ; and the latter means a mixture amongst other things, as *es gibt Unkraut unter dem Weizen*.

<i>aufs</i> (on the)	instead of	<i>auf das</i>
<i>zum</i> (to the)	„	<i>zu dem</i>
<i>zur</i> (to the)	„	<i>zu der</i>
<i>vom</i> (from the)	„	<i>von dem</i>
<i>durchs</i> (through the)	„	<i>durch das</i>

Explain—*am Fusze, im Flusse, aufs Feld, ins Gebirge, zum Ganzen, vom Berge, zur Aufgabe, &c., &c.*

CHAPTER XII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

RULE 118.—Conjunctions are invariable;⁹⁰ they serve to join words or sentences, and influence greatly in German the construction and the order of the language. (See Syntax.) They are of various kinds.

(A) Joining and disjoining sentences ; as—

und, and ; *auch*, also ; *oder*, or
wie auch, as also ; *ferner*, further ; *zugleich*, at the same time
sowohl als auch, both and
nicht nur sondern auch } not only but also
nicht allein sondern auch }
entweder oder, either or
weder noch, neither nor

(B) Shewing dependency, limit, or condition ; as—

<i>aber</i>	} but	<i>doch</i>	} yet	<i>wenn</i>	} if
<i>allein</i>		<i>jedoch</i>		<i>wo</i>	
<i>sondern</i>		<i>dennoch</i>		nevertheless		so, therefore

REMARK 90.—There are only few pure conjunctions that simply join words and have no influence upon the arrangement of a sentence ; they are : *und, aber, oder, allein, sondern, denn.*

student will have to consider the particular functions as to the GOVERNMENT, which some parts of speech impart to, or receive from others, and the respective relation (CONCORD) which one word in a sentence bears to another. Thus, for instance, we can say :

der Sohn liebt seinen Vater,
der Sohn folgt seinem Vater,
der Sohn steht vor seinem Vater,
der Sohn spricht für seinen Vater.

In every one of these four sentences *sein* and *Vater* stand in different cases (at least differently governed): thus in the first, it is the accusative (absolute) ; in the second, it is the dative (absolute); in the third, it is the dative (governed by *vor*) ; and in the fourth, it is the accusative (governed by *für*).

We can also say with an adjective :

der Sohn ist seines Vaters würdig,
der Sohn ist seinem Vater ähnlich.

Here again *sein* and *Vater* stand in different cases, governed by the adjectives *würdig* and *ähnlich*.

For these reasons we cannot put indiscriminately the same case after every substantive, verb, adjective, or adverb ; for it would be very wrong and ungrammatical to say :

der Sohn liebt seinem Vater,
der Sohn folgt seines Vaters,
der Sohn ist seinen Vater würdig.

as *lieben* requires an absolute accusative ; *folgen* an absolute dative ; and *würdig* an absolute genitive. Hence it results that there are GOVERNING and GOVERNED words or parts of speech.

The governing parts of speech are four in number : (1) the noun ; (2) the adjective and adverb ;¹ (3) the verb ; (4) the preposition.

The governed parts of speech are : (1) the noun and personal pronoun ; (2) the infinitive.

The governed cases are three : (1) the genitive ; (2) the dative ; (3) the accusative.

Before proceeding to the study of Chapter II. read well Remark 2.

CHAPTER II.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE 2.—If two or more nouns follow each other in the same sentence, they are :

(A) Either in the same case, as—*Vater und Sohn sind abgereist, Geld und Freunde hat er nicht.*

REMARK 1.—I have found it necessary to follow Dr. T. Heinsius' system of contracting in the Rules of Syntax the adjective with the adverb, as the adverbs to be treated upon are all derived from adjectives ; consequently a sort of adverbial adjectives.

REMARK 2.—The following are a few observations on the use of the article:—

(a) The definite article is used :

(1) To point out a noun in the whole extent of its meaning ; as, *der Mensch ist sterblich ; die Sonne scheint hell ; die Blumen blühen, &c., &c.*

(2) To point out a particular person or a thing ; as—*der Herr des Hauses : die Stadt Bury ; die Hauptschule der Stadt.*

(B) Or, in different cases, as—*der Garten meines Freundes, eine Summe von zwanzig Thalern.*

RULE 3.—They are in the same case under similar circumstances ; viz.—

(A) When enumerating several nouns that govern or are governed by the same verb ; as—

Glück, Ehre und Ruhm erwarten Dich.

Wägen, Pferde, Hunde, alles ist veräusert worden.

Er verlor nicht nur Geld und Freunde, sondern auch seine Ehre.

(B) When used in apposition, that is when one

(3) Before proper nouns, to point out a sect or class of men or individuals, or a certain thing done by certain individuals ; as—*den Schiller lesen (Schiller's Werke) ; den Kant studiren (Kant's Philosophie).*

(4) In speaking of persons with contempt ; as—*der Haynau, der Nero, der Windischgrätz.*

(b) The definite article is omitted :

(1) Before proper nouns ; as—*Martin Luther, Johann Knox, Isaac Newton.* But in the genitive, dative, and accusative cases euphony demands the article ; as—*des, dem, den Martin Luther.*

(2) Before titles and dignities of celebrated men and well-known persons : as—*König Wilhelm von England ; Fürst Lichtenstein ; General Garibaldi, &c., &c.*

(3) Before several nouns following one another, and being of the same gender and number ; as—*Wahrheit, Gerechtigkeit und Liebe sind die Pflichten eines jeden guten Christen.*

(4) Before collective or abstract nouns, taken generally ; as—*mit Blut bespritzt, Wein trinken, Obst essen, Wasser kochen, Brod backen, Papier kaufen.*

(c) The indefinite article is used :

(1) Before proper nouns used in a common sense ; as—*ein Wellington, ein Cäsar, ein Diogenes, &c., &c.*

(2) With a common noun, taken generally ; as—*ein Buch kaufen, einen Apfel essen, &c., &c.*

noun or adjective (with a noun understood), being of the same case, serves to complete the meaning of another;³ as—

Solon, der Gesetzgeber Athens.

Der Schlaf, der Befreier von Beschwerden.

Unter Cäsar, dem römischen Kaiser.

Ich spreche von Johann, dem alten Schulkameraden.

Ich verlor in ihm einen Freund, meinen besten.

RULE 4.—Two nouns are put in different cases (the second always in the genitive) if they are used under different circumstances ; viz.—

(A) To indicate property or possession ; as—

Der Schöpfer des Weltalls,

Dem Beherrscher dieses Landes,

Den Garten meines Freundes,

Der Vater Alexander's.

(B) To indicate the country, sex, age, or situation of a person, in which case the genitive generally precedes the nominative ; as—

Seines Handwerks ein Schmied,

Seiner Geburt ein Engländer,

Seines Geschlechts ein Edelmann,

Seines Alters zwanzig Jahre,

Ihrer Natur eine Löwin.

REMARK 3.—A proper noun completing the meaning of another noun remains always invariable, notwithstanding the case of the noun to which it stands in apposition ; as—

Die Größe des Königs Johann Sobieski.

Die Tapferkeit des Herzogs Wellington.

Die Wandelbarkeit des Monats April.

(c) To indicate a part of a whole;⁴ as—

*Die Thüren dieses Hauses,
Die Wolle des Schafes,
Der erste Band dieses Buches,
Der sechste Monat dieses Jahres,
Fünf Stunden dieses Tages.*

RULE 5.—Instead of the genitive, the dative with the prepositions *von* or *aus* may be used :—

(A) When pointing out the material of which a thing is made ; as—

*Ein Ring von Gold.
Ein Kleid von Seide.
Eine Bildsäule von Marmor.*

Observe, however, that instead of the above construction we may say, *eine goldener Ring, ein seidenes Kleid, eine marmorene Bildsäule*. (See (c) of Remark 25.)

(B) To point out the size, weight, worth, and volume of a thing ; as—

*Ein Graben von fünf Fusz Tiefe
Ein Käse von fünfzehn Pfund.
Ein Gehalt von sechs hundert Thalern.
Ein Zimmer von zwanzig Fusz Länge.*

REMARK 4.—But observe that owing to the peculiarity of the German language, we use the nominative in cases like the following:

*ein Gericht Fische
eine Mahlzeit Essen
ein Stück Brod
ein Glas Wein
ein Masz Milch
zehn Ellen Tuch
ein Haufen Holz*

*ein Hut Zucker
ein Pfund Salz
ein Stück trockenes Brod
ein Glasz gutes Bier
fünf Dutzend Taschentücher
zwei Ellen feines Tuch
ein Glas kaltes Wasser*

- (c) To point out countries, counties, and estates ;
as—

Die Königin von England.
Die Fabriken von Lancashire.
Die Gränzen von Schottland.

But in some cases the genitive may be used ; as—

Der König der Niederlande.
Der President der vereinigten Staate.
London's Handelsverkehr, &c., &c.

- (d) To describe the origin or the place from
whence a person comes or descends ; as—

Ein Prinz von Geblüt.
Ein Mahler aus Rom.
Ein Kaufmann aus (von) Manchester.

RULE 6.—The genitive must not be used ; if through
it arises a double meaning ; for if we say—

Die Liebe Gottes.
Die Dankbarkeit des Vaterlandes.

we do not state clearly whether it is the love we owe
to God, and the gratitude we owe to our country, that
we wish to express, or whether it is God's love to us,
and the country's gratitude for us, that we speak of.
To be clear, we must use a circumlocution by means
of the preposition *zu, gegen, für* ; and say—

Die Liebe zu Gott.
Die Dankbarkeit gegen das Vaterland.
 Or: *Gottes Liebe zu uns.*
Die Dankbarkeit des Vaterlandes gegen uns.

CHAPTER III.

OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

RULE 7.—Certain adjectives and adverbs govern the genitive, dative, or accusative cases of nouns and pronouns, with which they happen to be connected by the verbs *sein*, *werden*, *scheinen*, or *kommen*; as—

Er ist des Lohnes würdig und der Hilfe bedürftig.
Sei deiner Pflichten eingedenk und deinen Eltern gehorsam,
damit du nicht der Liebe guter Menschen unwürdig werdest.

RULE 8.—Adjectives and adverbs governing the GENITIVE case (principally of things) are:—

(A) Those that cannot be used without expressing an objective signification of the noun; as—

Des Geldes bedürftig sein;
Jeder Schandthat fähig scheinen;
Der Sprache kundig werden, &c., &c.

REMARK 5.—A list of adjectives and adverbs most in use, governing the genitive case:

<i>bedürftig</i> , needy	<i>müde</i> , tired
<i>beflissen</i> , assiduous	<i>quitt</i> , quits
<i>befugt</i> , authorised	<i>satt</i> , satisfied
<i>benöthigt</i> , forced	<i>schuldig</i> , guilty
<i>bewusst</i> , requisite	<i>theilhaftig</i> , partaking
<i>eingedenk</i> , mindful	<i>überdrüssig</i> , tired, wearied
<i>fähig</i> , fit	<i>unfähig</i> , unfit
<i>froh</i> , glad	<i>unwürdig</i> , unworthy
<i>gewisz</i> , certain	<i>verdächtig</i> , suspected
<i>gewohnt</i> , accustomed	<i>verlustig</i> , deprived of
<i>gewärtig</i> , looking for	<i>voll</i> , full
<i>kundig</i> , acquainted with	<i>werth</i> , } worthy
<i>los</i> , loose, slack	<i>würdig</i> , }
<i>mächtig</i> , mighty	<i>verdächtig</i> , suspicious, &c., &c.

(B) The two obsolete participles, *verblichen* (faded), and *verfahren* (proceeded), if used in connection with *Tod* (meaning to die, to expire); as—

Er ist des Todes verblichen.

Des Todes verfahren, hinterließ er.....

(C) Also adjectives and adverbs formed from the participles of verbs that govern the genitive case. (See Syntax, Rule 34.)

RULE 9.—Adjectives and adverbs governing the DATIVE case (usually of persons) are those that express a quality subjective to the actor; as—

Sie ist ihrer Mutter ähnlich,

Die Regel ist mir deutlich.

They are very numerous. Remark 5 contains a list of those most in use.⁶

REMARK 6.—A list of adjectives and adverbs governing the dative case most in use:—

<i>abgeneigt</i> , disinclined	<i>günstig</i> , favourable
<i>ähnlich</i> , resembling	<i>gut</i> , good
<i>angeboren</i> , inborn	<i>heilig</i> , holy
<i>angemessen</i> , suitable	<i>heilsam</i> , salutary
<i>angenehm</i> , agreeable	<i>heiss</i> , hot
<i>anhängig</i> , appended	<i>klar</i> , clear
<i>anheim</i> , home	<i>kostbar</i> , costly
<i>anständig</i> , decent	<i>lächerlich</i> , ridiculous
<i>ärgerlich</i> , vexatious	<i>lästig</i> , burdensome
<i>bange</i> , fearful	<i>leicht</i> , easy
<i>begreiflich</i> , intelligible	<i>lieb</i> , dear, beloved
<i>bekannt</i> , known	<i>möglich</i> , possible
<i>bequem</i> , easy	<i>nachtheilig</i> , prejudicial
<i>beschwerlich</i> , troublesome	<i>nahe</i> , near
<i>dankbar</i> , grateful	<i>nöthig</i> , necessary
<i>deutlich</i> , clear, distinct	<i>nützlich</i> , useful
<i>dienlich</i> , serviceable	<i>rathsam</i> , advisable
<i>dunkel</i> , dark	<i>rühmlich</i> , glorious

RULE 10.—Adjectives and adverbs governing the ACCUSATIVE case are those which, in connection with a number and a substantive, express measure, weight, age, worth, or time. They are :

<i>arm</i> , poor	<i>lang</i> , long	<i>stark</i> , strong
<i>alt</i> , old	<i>reich</i> , rich	<i>tief</i> , deep
<i>dick</i> , thick	<i>breit</i> , wide	<i>weit</i> , distant
<i>groß</i> , great	<i>schwer</i> , heavy	<i>werth</i> , worth, &c.

All these adjectives can be replaced by a corresponding substantive, joined to *haben* ; thus we can say :

With the adjective.	With the noun.
<i>Einen Finger dick sein.</i>	<i>Einen Finger an Dicke haben.</i>
<i>Zehn Jahre alt sein.</i>	<i>Zehn Jahre an Alter haben.</i>
<i>Fünf Ellen lang sein.</i>	<i>Fünf Ellen an Länge haben.</i>

RULE 11.—In compound substantives the adjective refers, like the article (see Part I., Rule 28), to the

<i>eigen</i> , peculiar	<i>sauer</i> , sour
<i>empfindlich</i> , susceptible	<i>schädlich</i> , hurtful
<i>entbehrlich</i> , superfluous	<i>schrecklich</i> , frightful
<i>ergeben</i> , submitted	<i>schuldig</i> , guilty
<i>erinnerlich</i> , coming to mind	<i>schwer</i> , heavy
<i>erlaubt</i> , permitted	<i>treu</i> , true
<i>erwünscht</i> , desired	<i>übel</i> , sick
<i>gefährlich</i> , dangerous	<i>überflüssig</i> , superfluous
<i>gehorsam</i> , obedient	<i>überlegen</i> , superior
<i>geläufig</i> , easy	<i>verächtlich</i> , despicable
<i>geneigt</i> , prone	<i>verantwortlich</i> , responsible
<i>gesund</i> , healthy	<i>verbindlich</i> , obliged
<i>getreu</i> , faithful	<i>verdächtig</i> , suspicious
<i>gewogen</i> , attached	<i>wahrscheinlich</i> , likely
<i>glaublich</i> , credible	<i>warm</i> , warm
<i>gleich</i> , even	<i>werth</i> , worth
<i>gnädig</i> , merciful	&c., &c.

and all those with the negative prefix *un-*,—*unlieb*, *undeutlich*, &c.

last component, therefore it is wrong to use with them an adjective that only applies to the first; thus, for instance, if we say—

Ein seidener Strumpfwirker.
Eine rohe Seidenfabrik.
Ein musikalischer Instrumentenmacher.
Gebundene Büchersammlung.
Reitende Artillerie-Kaserne.

we apply the adjective, intended for the second component, to the first. To be correct, we must say :

Ein Wirker seidener Strümpfe.
Eine Fabrik roher Seide.
Ein Mach'er musikalischer Instrumente (Tonwerkmeister).
Eine Sammlung gebundener Bücher.
Die Kaserne der reitenden Artillerie.

RULE 12.—An adjective placed before another adjective becomes an adverb, and, consequently remains invariable. Thus it is wrong to say :

Ein rechtes schönes Haus;
Ein rechter guter Mann.
Ein ganzes groszes Dorf.

But we must say—

Ein recht schönes Haus.
Ein recht guter Mann.
Ein ganz groszes Dorf.

RULE 13.—A number placed before a noun, in conjunction with a possessive pronoun, alters the meaning according to the place it occupies. Thus :

Meine drei Pferde, means my three horses; but
Drei meiner Pferde, means three of my horses.

CHAPTER IV.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE 14.—A personal pronoun must refer without any double meaning to a preceding noun. If a double meaning arises use *dieser* and *jener*, or alter the order of the sentence. Thus in the following sentences :

Sein Freund schrieb ihm, er habe das grosse Loos gewonnen.

Das Vertrauen, womit der Fürst diesen Günstling beehrte, gereichte zu seinem grössten Unglücke.

we cannot understand clearly who has won the great prize in the first, nor whose misfortune it was in the second. If we wish to express that it was the friend who won the prize, and the favourite whose misfortune it was, we must say :

Ich habe das grosse Loos gewonnen, schrieb ihm sein Freund.

Das Vertrauen womit der Fürst diesen Günstling beehrte, gereichte diesem zu seinem grössten Unglücke.

RULE 15.—The feminine pronoun *sie* must not follow itself immediately, as in the following sentence:—

Nachdem die Mutter ihre Tochter gesehen hatte, fragte sie sie.

Replace the second *sie* by *dieselbe*.

RULE 16.—A possessive pronoun must not be used instead of a personal pronoun. *Das Haus gehört meine*, is wrong, we must say : *Das Haus gehört mir*.

RULE 17.—*Mädchen* and *Fräulein* being diminutives are grammatically of the neuter gender ; but custom admits of pronouns referring to them to be of the feminine or neuter genders ; thus we can say :

Das gute Mädchen, es leidet sehr—obgleich es jetzt ausser Gefahr ist.

or we can replace both the *es* by *sie*.

CHAPTER V.

OF VERBS.

RULE 18.—The verb must agree with its subject (nominative case) in number and gender; as—*der Mensch denkt, die Menschen denken, Mann und Frau sind Eins.*⁷

RULE 19.—If the verb stands after two pronouns of different persons of the singular, it is put in the plural, and is preceded by the copulative *wir* or *ihr*; (see Part I. Remark 48) as—*ich und du, wir sind beide gleichen Sinnes; du und er, ihr habt es mir angesehen.*

THE USE OF TENSES.

RULE 20.—The present tense is used :

(A) To express an action going on or a state existing at the time of our speaking; as—

*Ich lese, du schreibst, der Vater lobt seinen Sohn,
Alle Menschen sind sterblich, &c., &c.*

(B) To express emphatically an action that has just taken place; as—

*Du verstehst, dasz ich es nicht thun kann.
Du hörst, dasz ich nicht Zeit habe.*

In both cases the present is used instead of the past, *du hast verstanden* and *du hast gehört*.

REMARK 7.—*Ein mal eins* is an exception to this rule, as we say:—*vier mal zehn ist vierzig*, and not *sind vierzig*.

(c) Instead of the past tense in narrations and works of fiction, to give the style more fluency and rapidity ; as—

Von Schrecken ergriffen, ergreift Telemachus sein Schwert.

(d) Instead of the future tense, when the action is about to take place immediately ; as—

Morgen reise ich nach London.

Diesen Nachmittag geh' ich spazieren.

RULE 21.—The imperfect tense is used :

(A) To describe an action or a state which has not been quite finished when another has begun, so that the former comes to its end through the beginning of the latter ; as—

Als ich las, kam mein Bruder zu mir.

Während wir schliefen, brach das Feuer aus.

Als wir uns dem Feinde näherten, entfloß er.

(B) In historical and descriptive narration ; as—

Cäsar eroberte die Britten.

Karl der Große bekehrte die Sachsen.

(c) To describe a past action, of which the narrator was an eye-witness ; as—

Gestern sah ich ein Regiment Soldaten vor meinem Hause vorbeimarschiren. Ich sah ihn diesen Morgen.

RULE 22.—The perfect or past tense is used :

(A) To describe a past action without reference to any other action or time ; as—

Ich habe ein Landgut gekauft.

Er hat mir einen Brief geschrieben.

(B) To express a past action, of which the narrator was not an eye-witness ; as—

Es hat sich etwas sehr merkwürdiges in Paris ereignet.

Das Dampfboot ist heute Morgens angekommen.

RULE 23.—The pluperfect tense is used to describe an action or a state of being as completely finished when something else, having a reference to it, has begun ; as—

*Als ich das Buch gelesen hatte, kam mein Bruder zu mir.
Nachdem wir drei Stunden geschlafen hatten, brach das Feuer aus.
Nachdem wir uns dem Feinde genähert hatten, entfloß er.*

RULE 24.—The future tense is used to express a future action without reference to anything else ; as—

Ich werde lesen ; er wird gehen ; sie werden schreiben.

RULE 25.—The past future tense is used to express a past future action with reference to another future action ; as—

*Wenn ich geschrieben haben werde, werde ich ausgehen.
Ich werde nach London gehen, sobald ich einen Brief von meinem Schwager werde erhalten haben.*

RULE 26.—As there is no conditional mood or tenses in the German language, render them according to Remark 59 of Part I.

Translate and illustrate :

I would write. She would have written. They would not write. Would we have written ? Would they not write ?

THE USE OF MOODS.

RULE 27.—The indicative mood expresses an action in a positive and independent manner ; as—

*Er stand vor der Thüre, als ich vorbeiging.
Er verwirft meinen Rath, ungeachtet er weisz, dasz ich es gut meine.*

RULE 28.—The subjunctive mood expresses possibility, doubt, and condition ; often a desire or dislike. It is used :

(A) After certain verbs implying a wish,^s purpose, hope, anxiety, fear, condition, and after conjunctions indicating an uncertainty or a condition, such as: *dass, damit, wenn, ob, obgleich, falls, wenn doch, als wenn, &c.*

Ich bat ihn, dass er zu mir käme.

Er rief ihm zu, dass er eile.

Ich zweifle, ob er kommen werde.

O ! dass es doch wahr wäre !

(B) In exclamations, when a conjunction is left out that would require a subjunctive ; as—

Könnte ich ihm doch helfen !

Hätte ich Geld !

Wäre er doch angekommen !

(C) In quoting our own or other people's words or speech ; as—

Er versicherte, er habe mir noch nicht Alles gesagt.

Ich sagte ihm, es sei nicht möglich.

Die Ankläger des Sokrates behaupteten ; er wäre des Todes schuldig, weil er die Jugend verführe.

RULE 29.—The imperative mood, expressing a command or an entreaty, has only the second person singular and plural. However, these two persons, as

REMARK 3.—The *wish* for accomplishment of the action is generally expressed by the present or the past, and the *improbable* accomplishment by the imperfect and the pluperfect tenses. Illustrate this remark in the following sentences :

Ich wünsche, dass er komme.

Ich befürchte, dass er es thue.

Ich wünsche, dass er käme.

Ich befürchte, dass er es thäte.

well as all other persons, may be replaced by the subjunctive mood with a conjunction, or by the infinitive mood of the required verb with *lassen, sollen, können, mögen, müssen, and wollen*.

Explain, according to this rule, the grammatical construction of each of the following sentences :

Traue ihm nicht zu viel. Mögest du ihm nicht zu viel trauen. Lasz ihn gehen! Dasz er gehen möge. Laszt uns, nach den Besseren uns richten. Dasz wir nach den Besseren uns richten mögen. Gib mir dieses Buch. Ich will, dasz du mir dieses Buch gebest.

RULE 30.—A noun or pronoun joined to a verb either governs it; as—*der Mensch denkt, er schreibt, die Kinder spielen*; or is governed by it; as—*er schreibt einen Brief, wir haben ein groszes Haus*.

RULE 31.—A noun or pronoun that governs a verb is always in the nominative case; and the verb, if in a personal mood, agrees with it in number and person; as—*der Mensch denkt, die Menschen denken, du denkst, wir denken*; but if it is in the infinitive mood it takes the preposition *zu* before it; as—*der Wunsch zu leben, die Freiheit zu denken*.

RULE 32.—A noun or pronoun, governed by the verb, is placed :

- (A) In the nominative : *Du bist mein Nachbar.*
- (B) In the genitive : *Er klagt dich der Lüge an.*
- (C) In the dative : *Ich folge deinem Rathe.*
- (D) In the accusative : *Ich liebe meinen Lehrer.*

RULE 33.—Verbs requiring the nominative case before and after, are :

(A) Verbs expressing an absolute state of being, viz: *sein, werden, scheinen, bleiben, heißen*; as—

Wir sind Menschen.

Er heißt Johann.

Er wird Hauptmann.

Heinrich scheint ein guter

Ich bleibe dein Freund.

Knabe.

&c., &c., &c.

(B) The passive voice of *schelten, schimpfen, taufen*; as—

Er wird ein Lügner gescholten.

Er ist Joseph getauft worden.

(c) Verbs in which the noun following stands in apposition to the noun preceding, and is joined to it by the conjunctions *als* or *wie*; ⁹ as:—

Er starb als ein Held.

Sie blüht wie eine Rose.

Er freut sich wie ein Kind.

Wir handeln als Freunde.

Er lebt wie ein Herr.

Er spricht wie ein Engländer.

RULE 34.—Verbs requiring the genitive are:

(A) The following active verbs, having an accusative of persons:

anklagen, to accuse

erwähnen, to mention

belehren, to instruct

gedenken, to think of

berauben, to rob of

überführen, to convict

beschuldigen, to accuse

überzeugen, to prove

entladen, to unload

überheben, to exempt

entlassen, to dismiss

verweisen, to expel

entledigen, to get rid of

würdigen, to honour

entsetzen, to depose

zeihen, to chide

(B) The verbs *sein, leben, sterben*, and *verbleichen* in certain idiomatic expressions; as—*Willens sein*;

REMARK 9.—With some separable reflexive verbs the second noun is by exception used in the accusative; as—

Er stellte sich mir als einen Mann von Ehre dar.

guten Muthes sein; der guten Hoffnung leben; eines schmählichen Todes sterben, &c.

(c) The two impersonal verbs: *mich gelüstet* and *mich jammert*.

(d) The greater part of reflective verbs having an accusative of persons; as—

Mein Bruder befeiziget sich der Musik.

Er wird sich deiner erbarmen.

Der Feind hat sich der Stadt bemächtigt.

&c., &c. [See (c) Remark 73.]

(e) Some verbs followed by certain idiomatic expressions to point out time, place, mood, and manner;¹⁰ as—

Er kommt des Morgens. Ich gehe hin des Abends.

Das Concert ist Donnerstags; &c., &c.

RULE 35.—Verbs requiring the dative are:¹¹

REMARK 10.—The following are some of the expressions used in the genitive only:

<i>des Morgens</i> , during the morning	<i>zwei ganzer Stunden</i> , two whole
<i>des Tages</i> , during the day	<i>aller Orten</i> , everywhere [hours
<i>des Nachts</i> , during the night	<i>hiesigen Ortes</i> , from here
<i>des Jahres</i> , during the year	<i>geraden Weges</i> , straight along
<i>heutigen Tages</i> , during to-day	<i>stehenden Fusses</i> , as he is
<i>des Abends</i> , during the evening	<i>guten Theils</i> , in good part
<i>Sonntags</i> , on Sunday	<i>meines Wissens</i> , to my knowledge
<i>Montags</i> , on a Monday, &c., &c.	&c., &c.

REMARK 11.—The absolute dative is also used instead of the accusative (with a preposition).

(a) In popular language, to point out more forcibly the interest of the person speaking or spoken to; as—

Das nenne ich MIR noch eine Freude; (für mich)

Das war DIR eine Lust; (für dich)

Das ist MIR ein schöner Herr. (für mich)

(b) Often in poetry and cultivated language, to avoid the use of a preposition; as—

DIR läutert sich die Luft, (für dich)

DIR grünet Berg und Thal, (für dich)

DIR schmückt das fromme Mädchen sich. (für dich)

(A) Impersonal verbs used reflectively, having an intransitive signification; as—*es behaght mir; es beliebt Ihnen; &c., &c.* [See (a) Remark 70.]

(B) Many active verbs, having for their object an accusative of a thing; as—

<i>Er kauft MIR ein Buch.</i>	<i>Schreibe MIR einen Brief.</i>
<i>Ich gönne DIR dein Glück.</i>	<i>Gib MIR mein Brod.</i>
<i>Schicke MEINEM BRUDER einen Wagen.</i>	<i>Er meldet MIR den Tod seines Vaters.</i>

[See next Rule.]

(c) The verbs *sein, werden, es steht* and *es fällt*, used with an adverb; as—

<i>Es ist mir übel.</i>	<i>Dir wird's wohl.</i>
<i>Es steht mir gut.</i>	<i>Es fällt mir schwer.</i>

(D) Compound neuter verbs composed with *ab, an, auf, bei, ein, entgegen, nach, unter, vor, zu,*¹³ as—

<i>Ich gehe dir entgegen.</i>	<i>Du bildest dir ein.</i>
<i>Ich stehe dir bei.</i>	<i>Er läuft dir nach, &c.</i>

REMARK 12.—Some neuter verbs like the following take the dative:

<i>abrathen</i> , to dissuade	<i>glauben</i> , to believe
<i>angehören</i> , to belong	<i>gleichen</i> , to resemble
<i>begegnen</i> , to meet	<i>lächeln</i> , to smile
<i>bezahlen</i> , to pay	<i>nutzen</i> , to be profitable
<i>bleiben</i> , to remain	<i>rathen</i> , to advise
<i>danken</i> , to thank	<i>sagen</i> , to say
<i>dienen</i> , to serve	<i>schaden</i> , to hurt
<i>erlauben</i> , to permit	<i>scheinen</i> , to appear
<i>folgen</i> , to follow	<i>vergeben</i> , to forgive
<i>gefallen</i> , to please	<i>widersprechen</i> , to contradict
	<i>&c., &c., &c.</i>

RULE 36.—Verbs requiring the accusative are :¹³

(A) All active verbs having an object to act upon.

Illustrate it in—

<i>Ich begehre meinen Lohn ;</i>	<i>Heinrich liest ein Buch ;</i>
<i>Du schreibst einen Brief ;</i>	<i>Er liebt seinen Vater ;</i>
<i>Der Bauer ackert das Feld ;</i>	<i>Die Mutter liebt Rosa.</i>

(B) Neuter verbs that can be used actively. (See Rule 71.) Illustrate it in—

Heinrich hat den Fuchsen geritten.
Ihr Kutscher hat uns sehr schlecht gefahren.

(C) All verbs used reflectively conjugated with the accusative. (See Rule 76, Remark 73.) Illustrate it in—

<i>Er achtet sich.</i>	<i>Du verwunderst dich.</i>
<i>Ihr entehrt euch.</i>	<i>Er mäszt sich.</i>

(D) Reflective verbs having the dative of persons (see Remark 72), or the genitive of things (see (D) Rule 34). Illustrate it in—

Der Feind hat sich des Landes bemächtigt.
Mein Freund hat sich der deutschen Sprache befleißigt.
Gott wird sich deiner erbarmen.

(E) Impersonal verbs used reflectively. (See (A) Remark 71.) Illustrate it in—

Es ängstigt mich in diesem öden Lande.
Es verdrieszt mich, dich so oft zu ermahnen.
Es gereut ihn, dies gethan zu haben.

RULE 37.—Some active verbs require, besides the accusative case acted upon, also a dative case, to express the purpose of the action ; thus in saying *ich*

REMARK 13 —In poetry, the absolute accusative is used instead of the dative (with a preposition); as—*die Leyer in der Hand* (instead of *mit der Leyer*).

schicke IHNEN ein *Buch*, *er schreibt* DIR einen *Brief*, *sie geben* UNS *Geld*, we express, besides the direct objects, *Buch*, *Brief*, and *Geld*, the indirect object, or the purpose of the action, viz., *Ihnen*, *dir*, and *uns*. Illustrate it in—

Er opfert sein Leben dem Vaterlande.

Ich unterwerfe die Sache dem Urtheile der Welt.

Mein Sohn schreibt dir einen Brief.

Observe that the dative need not of necessity represent a person expressed by a personal pronoun, every noun being of the third person.

From the above explanation it results that if we find in a sentence, as objects of a verb, a person and a thing, the person must be in the dative and the thing in the accusative.

RULE 38.—There are also active verbs that have two accusative cases, viz. :

(A) The verbs, *heissen*, *nennen*, *schelten*, and *schimpfen* require two absolute accusative cases ; as—

Er nennt mich seinen Freund.

Man heisst ihn einen Narren.

(B) Active verbs—where the action falls directly upon a person (or a thing personified), and indirectly upon an inseparable part of that person—require also two accusative cases, the first absolute, and the second governed by a preposition ; as—

Er schlug MICH auf den Kopf

Er trifft DEN NAGEL auf den Kopf

Er küsste SIE auf die Stirn.

although, in common acceptation, the active verbs *schlagen*, *treffen*, and *küssen* would make a complete

sentence without the second accusative, yet as the second accusative forms an inseparable part of the first, and as the action is done upon both of them at once, the two accusatives are properly used with one verb.¹⁴ Illustrate it in—

Sie schlügen IHN (Christum) ins Angesicht.
Er schoss IHN ins Herz,
Sie stachen DEN CÄSAR ins Angesicht.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

RULE 39.—To express an action, a state of being, or a judgment, we use three parts or words ; viz.:

(A) The person or thing acting or spoken of :—
 SUBJECT.

(B) An attribute, a thing or a quality affirmed or denied of it :—PREDICATE.

REMARK 14.—But mark that we must use the second accusative in its absolute form and replace the first one by the dative or a personal pronoun in sentences like the following :

Ich stieß MIR den Kopf,
Er küßte IHR die Hand.

Or with the possessive pronoun :

Ich stieß MEINEN Kopf
Er küßte IHRE Hand.

(c) A word which connects the subject with the predicate :—COPULA or VERB.¹⁵

In joining these three words we produce a sentence; as—

Affirmatively : *Das Haus ist gross.*

Negatively : *Das Haus ist nicht gross.*

Interrogatively : *Ist das Haus gross?*

RULE 40.—The subject or nominative case is generally :

(A) A substantive : DER MENSCH *denkt.*

(B) A pronoun : ER *denkt.*

(C) An adjective : WEISZ *ist nicht schwarz.*

(D) An infinitive : REGIEREN *ist eine schwere Kunst.*

RULE 41.—The predicate is usually :

(A) A verb adjective ; as—

Der Mensch DENKT (is denkend).

Die Vögel FLIEGEN (sind fliegend).

(B) An adjective with the copula IST or WIRD ;

as—

Der Knabe IST gross.

Er WIRD bescheiden.

(c) A noun with the verbs IST or WIRD ; as—

Er IST ein Kaufmann.

Wir WERDEN Soldaten.

RULE 42.—Sentences are either simple or compound.

Simple, if consisting only of a subject, a predicate, and a copula ; as—

Das Feuer brennt.

Der Mensch ist sterblich.

Die Sonne scheint.

Die Sterne glänzen.

REMARK 15.—There is only *one verb or copula* in the German language, viz. : *sein* ; every other verb is a mere verb adjective, consisting of its present participle and the verb *sein*, thus : *Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt*, is a contraction of *Der Mensch ist denkend, Gott ist lenkend*.

Compound, if containing several subjects or predicates ;¹⁶ as—

Vater und Mutter sind todt.

Er schreibt und spricht zu gleicher Zeit.

RULE 43.—Compound sentences are of three kinds :

(A) Sentences in which occur several subjects or predicates in the following manner :

1. Several subjects with only one predicate ; as—

VERSTAND, GEDÄCHTNISZ, PHANTASIE, &c., sind einzelne
KRÄFTE der menschlichen Seele.

2. One subject and several predicates ; as—

Die SONNE ERLEUCHTET und ERWÄRMET die Erde.

3. Several subjects and several predicates ; as—

MENSCHEN, THIERE und PFLANZEN ENTSTEHEN, WACHSEN
und VERGEHEN.

(B) Sentences in which there is comparison or gradation ; as—

*Der redliche Arbeiter ist MEHR WERTH ALS der reiche
Schwelger.*

REMARK 16.—As regards the compound sentences, their study is one of the most difficult and most complicated theories in existence; it can only be fully understood and appreciated by advanced pupils and with the practical assistance of a master. Constant reading of good authors, comparing and imitating their various ways of expression, are the only ways of attaining, if not perfection, at least a tolerable proficiency of the logical construction of the German language. Dr. Theodore Heinsius says, in a note on this subject: "It is incomprehensible how some elementary grammars have pages filled up with rules and explanations on the different kinds of compound sentences, although the primary schools have neither the time nor the mind to study them nor to follow them up."

(c) Sentences in which the predicate is joined to the subject exclusively, or under an especial condition ; as—

Unter allen Geschöpfen der Erde ist der Mensch allein vernünftig.

This sentence contains three sentences :

Es gibt mehrere Geschöpfe, (unter allen Geschöpfen).

Der Mensch ist eine Art derselben, (der Geschöpfe).

And,

Der Mensch ist das einzige vernünftige Geschöpf. (allein vernünftig).

RULE 44.—Sentences are also :

(A) Narrative : *Die ersten Bewohner der Erde haben in Asien gelebt.*

(B) Imperative : *Erst überlege, dann handle.*

(C) Interrogative : *Bist du in der Schule gewesen ?*

(D) Negative : *Ich habe es nicht gethan.*

(E) Exclamative : *Möchte er sich doch bessern !*

(F) Conditional : *Wenn est wahr ist, so sind wir verloren.*

RULE 45.—All sentences are either principal or accessory: the former are substantial and independent, whereas the latter are subordinate and dependent ; as—*Die Erde ist die Mutter aller lebenden Wesen, WEIL sie alles ernährt.* The first half of this period is a principal, the second an accessory or subordinate sentence, beginning with the conjunction *weil*.

Illustrate this rule in the following periods :

Wir werden siegen, WENN wir zu sterben wissen.

Er lebt zufrieden, OBGLEICH er wenig hat.

Wir besuchen eine Schule, DAMIT wir etwas lernen.

RULE 46.—Consider as accessory or subordinate every sentence beginning with one of the relative pronouns, *der, welcher, was, wo*, or the conjunctions *wenn, denn, weil, als, dasz, damit, &c.*, serving to indicate the subjective, objective, or attributive idea of time, place, motive, or condition of the principal sentence.

Illustrate it in :

Der Mensch, WELCHER DENKT, bildet seinen Geist.

Ich verdanke ihm alles Gute, WAS ICH GENIESSE.

Ein Mann, DER WEISE IST, handelt auch tugendhaft.

RULE 47.—If two sentences are connected in such a manner that the latter explains the meaning of the former, they are called a period.¹⁷ The first is the antecedent (*Vordersatz*), and the second the conclusion (*Nachsatz*). The first begins usually with the conjunctions *als, da, wie, wenn, nachdem, indem, weil, &c.*; and the second with *so*, expressed or understood.

Illustrate it in :

Nachdem der König die Schlacht gewonnen hatte; (so) rückte er in des Feindes Land ein.

The order of these sentences need not be always the same; it can be altered in the following way without altering the meaning :

Der König rückte . . . nachdem er . . .

Or,

Der König rückte, nachdem er . . . in des . . .

REMARK 17.—Long and complicated periods produce confusion and obscurity of style, therefore they ought to be avoided as much as possible. We must also avoid introducing matter into a period which is foreign to it, as the period must contain ONLY such sentences as have a strict and immediate connection with one another. To form well sounding and elegant periods we must read attentively good books; as well sounding periods and a harmonious change of expression form the beauty of every language.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE CONTRACTION AND ABBREVIATION OF
SENTENCES.

RULE 48.—Contracted or abbreviated sentences are—

(A) In which the conjunction or the relative pronoun and the auxiliary verb is left out, as—

Ehre verloren, Alles verloren.

instead of—

Wenn die Ehre verloren ist, ist Alles verloren.

(B) In apposition, as—

Der Vater, ein rechtschaffener Mann, . . .

instead of—

Der Vater, welcher ein rechtschaffener Mann war, . . .

(C) In participial construction, in which two sentences are joined into one by means of the participles or adjectives¹⁸ (observe they both must have the same object); as—

So redend, starb er. (Als er so geredet hatte, . . .)

Weinend kam er zu mir. (Indem er weinte, . . .)

REMARK 18.—The participial construction, however, not being of a German origin, and being merely borrowed from Latin and Greek, must be used very carefully, so as not to produce a double meaning. For instance, in the following sentence—

Ich sah ihn, tief gebeugt, in Fesseln liegen.

we do not know, who was bending down, I or he. If it be he, we must say:

Ich sah ihn, den tief Gebeugten, in Fesseln liegen.

if it be I, we must say:

Indem ich mich tief beugte, sah ich ihn in Fesseln liegen.

*Oft gewarnt, erlag er endlich den Folgen seines Leichtsinns.
 (Nachdem er oft gewarnt worden ist, erlag,)
 Arm und unglücklich, war er von Allen verlassen. (Da er
 arm war,)
 Gesetzt es wäre so. (den Fall gesetzt, dass es so wäre).*

All contracted and abbreviated sentences can be extended in this way to their full length.

RULE 49.—The past participle can only be used in a passive voice, and with *sein*; thus we cannot say:

Die Wolke, ihr Wasser auf die Erde HERABGESCHÜTTET, wird leicht vom Winde getrieben.

The past participle *herabgeschüttet* has in this sentence an active and not a passive voice. To be correct, we must either say *herabschüttelnd*, or use a circumlocution, such as—

Wenn sie ihr Wasser herabgeschüttet hat . . .

RULE 50.—There is also in German an abbreviation, consisting in the ellipses, viz. :—in the dropping of a certain word or words, when the omission is quite intelligible in the sentence. Thus, for instance, Gellert said very forcibly in his fable of a miser to his ape :

Komm' ich hinauf zu dir, so soll dein Blut ———.

Everybody, understanding the German language, will not fail to see that the dash (——) means *fließen*. Many proverbs are of that kind ; as—

Besser arm mit Ehren, als reich mit Schanden.

Ende gut, Alles gut.

Jung gewohnt, alt gethan.

Ein Vogel in der Hand ist besser als zehn auf dem Dache.

Parse logically the above sentences.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE ORDER OF WORDS AS PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

RULE 51.—In forming a sentence in which there is a subject, a predicate, and a verb,¹⁹ we must bear in mind that the places which the different words occupy can be changed without altering their meaning ; thus sentences like the following—

Der König schenkte ihm das Leben.

can be altered in four different ways :

1. *Das Leben schenkte ihm der König.*
2. *Ihm schenkte das Leben der König.*
3. *schenkte ihm der König das Leben.*
4. *(wen) der König das Leben ihm schenkte.*

RULE 52.—The most usual order of words are :²⁰

REMARK 19.—The same rule must be observed in the construction of a period, or of several sentences depending upon each other.

REMARK 20.—(a) All accessory words or sentences must be placed immediately after the principal word or sentence to which they belong ; the clearness and precision of the speech greatly depend on it. This must be especially observed with the use of *allein*, *nur*, *vornehmlich*, *besonders*, *wenigstens*, *selbst*, *nicht*, &c., &c., as these words placed differently, alter the meaning of the whole sentence. Distinguish between—

Ich habe ihn ALLEIN gesehen.

Ich ALLEIN habe ihn gesehen.

Ich habe sie SELBST gefunden.

Ich SELBST habe sie gefunden.

Er ist IMMER nicht zu Hause.

Er ist nicht IMMER zu Hause.

(b) Several accessory or descriptive words cannot always be placed indifferently before a substantive ; in many cases, out of two or three

(A) The narrative or natural kind, where all the words follow in their usual order (see Rule 39); as—

Der glückliche Vater dieses jungen Menschen, erhielt für ihn eine äusserst gute Stelle.

(B) The interrogative kind, where the verb or the auxiliary precedes the subject; as—

Hat der glückliche Vater dieses jungen Menschen eine Stelle für ihn erhalten?

(C) The imperative kind, where the verb begins the sentence; as—

Schreibe mir. Sei fleissig. Bete und arbeite.

(D) The conjunctive or relative form, the most irregular of all: in it the conjunction or the relative pronoun begins the sentence, and the verb ends it; as—

Wenn ich Geld hätte würde ich ein Haus kaufen.

Wenn Sie mich liebten würde ich Sie auch lieben.

Was schön ist, ist nicht immer nützlich.

RULE 53.—There can be an exception to the given order of the words in a sentence, *i. e.*, when euphony, rapidity, and emphasis require it; and this deviation is called *inversion*.²¹

adjectives only one might be especially adapted to the noun it precedes; thus it would be wrong to say:

Sein französischer mündlicher Ausdruck ist beinahe besser als sein schriftlicher.

The adjective *französischer* belongs exclusively to *Ausdruck*, and cannot be separated from it. To be correct, we must say:

Sein mündlicher französischer, &c., &c.

REMARK 21.—The inversion must not be used merely for the sake of inverting, and great care must be taken not to produce through it a double meaning. Thus, for instance, it would be unnecessary to invert *Meine Feder ergreife ich, um Ihnen zu schreiben*, as it is to no purpose. The simple and natural order will read and sound much better—*Ich ergreife meine Feder, um, &c., &c.*

The inversion takes place :

(A) When an infinitive, an adjective, an adverb, or a participle is used as a nominative ; as—

ARBEITEN ist mir Lust.
 ENTBEHREN soll ich dieses Glück.
 GROSZ ist der Held im Kampf fürs Vaterland.
 GESTERN lebte er noch.
 ENTKRÄFTET lag er auf seinem Bette.

(B) When a preposition with its case is placed at first ; as—

FÜR Schwüre dient ein Ja.
 OHNE Ordnung ist kein Gedeihen.

(C) When the case governed by a verb begins the sentence ; as—

DIE grünet das Thal.
 DIE sprieszen die Blumen.
 DEM HÖCHSTEN muszt du trauen.
 DEN JÜNGLING raubte der Tod.

(D) When for the sake of emphasis the nominative case is repeated by a personal pronoun (as in French) ; as—

Dieses Vergnügen, werde ich ES genießen ?
Die Blüthe der Gesundheit, wie bald verwelkt SIE in Kraftlosigkeit und Krankheit !

(E) When the adjective is placed after the noun (in the Greek way) ; as—

Drei Worte nenn' ich euch, INHALTSCHWER.
Die Achaier, die HAUPTUMLOCKTEN.
Hinten sodann die Männer zu Fuss, die VIELEN und TAPFEREN.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE ORDER OF SENTENCES.

RULE 54.—Unless in a period (see Rule 47 of Syntax), the order of sentences is optional, and depends greatly on the emphasis we wish to impart to our discourse ; thus, we can say,—

Als ich weggehen wollte, kam mein Freund.

or,

Mein Freund kam, als ich weggehen wollte.

Obgleich er arm ist, so lebt er doch vergnügt ;

or,

Er lebt vergnügt, obgleich er arm ist.

Observe that conclusive sentences formed by *aber*, *sondern*, *doch*, *daher*, and *darum* must always follow the preceding sentence ; as—

Es ist eine Lüge, beruhige dich DAHER.

Er ist nachlässig, DARUM liebe ich ihn nicht.

Es ist allerdings wahr, ABER du hättest es doch nicht sagen sollen.

Nicht er, ABER ich bin Schuld daran.

RULE 55.—In apposition (see Syntax, Rule 3), a sentence occupies, like any other incidental sentence, the middle of the principal sentence : as—

Die Gerechtigkeit, DIE HÖCHSTE UNTER ALLEN TUGENDEN, ist jedem Menschen zu empfehlen.

Der Mann, DER ES AUFRICHTIG MEINT, ist mir allein schätzenswerth.

RULE 56.—The inversion of which we have treated in Rule 53 as regards words, refers likewise to sentences. However, to promote energy and rapidity

of style, the antecedent is generally put behind the completing sentence ; but care must be taken not to obscure the meaning, or to introduce a double meaning into it ; as—

Dasz ich wohlgethan hätte, seinem Rathe zu folgen, sehe ich nun zu spät ein.

CHAPTER X.

OF PUNCTUATION.

RULE 57.—The following are the principal marks of punctuation in German :

- (A) The fullstop (.) *der Schluszpunkt.*
- (B) The colon (:) *der Doppelpunkt.*
- (C) The semicolon (;) *der Strichpunkt.*
- (D) The comma (,) *der Beistrich.*
- (E) The note of interrogation (?) *das Fragezeichen.*
- (F) The note of exclamation (!) *das Ausrufungszeichen.*

RULE 58.—The fullstop (.) is used at the end of a sentence or a period ; as—

Unsere Sprache hat sich, wie jede andere, erst nach und nach zu ihrer jetzigen Schönheit und Vollkommenheit erhoben.

RULE 59.—The colon (:) is used :

- (A) In quoting our own or other people's words or sentences ; as—

Er sagte : ich habe Alles gethan, was ich thun konnte.

(B) In quoting examples or passages ; as—

Unter andern fand sich folgende Stelle : es lebte &c., &c.

(C) In enumerating several nouns ; as—

Um die Grösze Englands haben sich folgende Männer verdient gemacht : Fox, Pitt, Wellington, Palmerston, &c., &c.

RULE 60.—The semicolon (;) is used :

(A) In separating the two sentences of a period ;
as—

Er ist zwar reich ; aber nicht wohlthätig.

(B) In all sentences and periods consisting of several subordinate parts :

Zu den Vergnügungen der Menschen gehören auch die Spiele. Es gibt viele Arten derselben. Einige beschäftigen und üben den Verstand ; andere nähren die Hoffnung und Begierde nach Gewinn ; noch andere sind zur Bewegung und Übung unserer Körperkraft ; aber unter allen ist das Schachspiel das edelste.

RULE 61.—The comma (,) is used :

(A) To distinguish the smaller portions of a period ; as—

Friedrich der Zweite, genannt der Einzige, war die Zierde seines Jahrhunderts.

(B) Before all relative pronouns and conjunctions ;
as—

Der Mensch, welcher denkt und spricht. Mein Vater, den ich liebe und ehre. Es ist besser zu vergeben, als sich zu rächen.

(C) Between several subjects and predicates, if they are not joined by *und* or *oder* ; as—

Luther war ein kluger, gelehrter, beherzter, kühner und feuriger Mann. Glück, Ehre und Ruhm erwarten Dich.

RULE 62.—The note of interrogation (?) is used with every question, and also to replace in writing the expression of living voice ; as—

Was machst du ? Wie haben sie geschlafen ? fragte er. Was soll das heissen ?

RULE 63.—The note of exclamation (!) is used after all exclamations ; as—

Fort mit dir ! Welcher Gedanke !

but simple interjections beginning a sentence receive only a comma, and the exclamation is put at the end of the sentence ; as—

Ach, welch ein Unglück !

RULE 64.—There are also some other marks used in writing and in print ; as—

(A) The parenthesis () or brackets [] *das Einschliessungszeichen.*

(B) The dash (—) *der Gedankenstrich.*

(C) The quotation (“ ”) *das Anführungszeichen.*

(D) The apostrophe (') *der Apostroph.*

(E) The hyphen (-) or (—) *das Bindezeichen.*

(F) The hiatus (* * * *) or (- - -) or (. . . .)
das Lückenzeichen.

(G) The asterisk (*) *das Sternchen.*

Their use is the same in German as in English.

EXERCISES

ON

THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,

ADAPTED TO

DR. DE WELDYCZ' GERMAN GRAMMAR.

The following Exercises have been carefully prepared and arranged, in order to give the pupil a practical means of working out the theory of Grammar.

The teacher will have to explain to the student such rule, or set of rules, as are marked on the top of each alternative exercise. Let them be well understood and learned off before proceeding to the exercises. The examples of each rule, especially of the first seven chapters, must be well committed to memory, as they will frequently occur in the course of the exercises.

For each rule, or set of rules, one or two exercises have been arranged, those that are in German, must be read out, parsed, and translated *viva voce*; those in English, to be construed into German, and, after being corrected, to be read out in German from the English text.

It would be advisable for beginners to commence the theoretical part of the study with Chapter I. and Chapter VIII., so as to be able to construe, by means of the auxiliary verbs, the simple and easy sentences of these exercises.

On the foot of the pages there are some additional exercises, numerically arranged, referring exclusively to the remarks on the rules; they may be omitted by beginners, but must be gone through by advanced pupils.

Any word which is not contained in the vocabulary above the exercises, or in the examples of the rules and remarks, will be found in the appendix following the exercises.

PART III.*

CONTAINING EXERCISES ON THE RULES OF GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX,
ALSO ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE REMARKS OF GRAMMAR
AND SYNTAX.

SECTION I.

EXERCISES ON THE RULES OF GRAMMAR.

1.

Rules 4, 5.

1. Dem. 2. Jenem. 3. Dieser. 4. Manchen.
5. Jedes. 6. Solchen. 7. Des. 8. Der. 9. Das.
10. Dieses. 11. Allen. 12. Etliche. 13. Keinem.
14. Jenes. 15. Jedem. 16. Die. 17. Etliches.
18. Diesem.

2.

1. Of the (m.). 2. To such (f. s.). 3. To each (n.
s. and pl.). 4. To the (m. s. and pl.). 5. To this
(f. s. and pl.). 6. Many a one (s. and pl.). 7. To all.

* Before writing out these Exercises the pupil must acquire a complete mastery of German characters, otherwise the translation of Exercises will become long and tedious, and the writing may be well learnt whilst the pupil learns off the General Observations and the Introduction to Grammar; pages 1, 2, 3, 4.

8. The (acc. m. and n.). 9. The (f.). 10. To this (s. and pl.). 11. Of this (pl.). 12. This (acc. m. f. and n.).

3.

Rules 6, 7.

1. Eines. 2. Deines. 3. Unseres. 4. Seinem. 5. Seiner. 6. Einem. 7. Ein. 8. Deiner. 9. Unseren. 10. Ihre. 11. Ihr. 12. Einer. 13. Seines. 14. Deiner. 15. Meinem. 16. Meiner. 17. Meinen. 18. Seine.

4.

1. To a (m. and f.). 2. To his (pl.). 3. From our. 4. Of a (n. s.). 5. My (nom. pl.). 6. Of my (pl.). 7. To thy (m. f. and pl.). 8. Of a (n. and f.). 9. A (acc. m. and n.). 10. Thy (acc. m. and f.). 11. His (acc. f. and n.). 12. Their (acc. pl.).

5.

Rule 11. Present tense of *haben* and *sein*.

<i>in</i> , in (dat.)	<i>und</i> , and.	<i>groß</i> , big (tall).
<i>auf</i> , on (dat.)	<i>gut</i> , good.	<i>klein</i> , little.

1. Der Vater hat ein Kind. 2. Das Messer ist auf dem Tische. 3. Der Bruder ist in dem Garten. 4. Der König ist gut. 5. Der Tisch und das Messer.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 1 (Remark 3).—Write out the English of the following nouns with their gender, and give the English:—

Heiligthum, Apfel, Blume, Rose, Montag, Sonntag, Ostwind, Tanne, Fichte, Maiblume, Aprikose, Jupiter, Heuchelei, Löwin, Freiheit, Kleinigkeit, Freundschaft, Endung, Biegung, Umarmung, Herzogthum, Scheusal, Trübsal, Gebirge, Schneider, Wäscherin, Nähterin.

State the reasons why you assigned the respective genders to the different nouns.

6. Das Pferd des Arztes. 7. Dem Bruder des Königs.
 8. Dem Arzte meines Vaters. 9. Des Messers und
 des Löffels. 10. In dem Garten des Bruders unseres
 Königs. 11. Das Buch des Kindes. 12. Der Garten
 meines Vaters.

6.

1. To a child of a physician. 2. In my brother's
 garden (the garden of my brother.) 3. The sword of
 the king. 4. The spoon is little. 5. The knife is on
 the table. 6. The child is in the garden. 7. The
 window of the house. 8. The friend of the physician.
 9. Has the child a father. 10. Have you a knife.
 11. I have a sword. 12. We have a garden.

7.

Rule 12.

Land (n.), country. *gesehen*, seen. *krank*, ill.

1. Er hat einen Affen und wir haben einen Löwen.
 2. Ich habe einen Riesen gesehen. 3. Der Adjutant
 des Regimentes ist krank. 4. Er ist ein Ungar,
 und ich bin ein Britte. 5. Ein Freund des Jesuiten.
 6. Das Land des Britten. 7. Dem Bothen des Königs.
 8. Dem Adjutanten des Königs. 9. Ich habe einen
 Hasen in dem Garten gesehen. 10. Das Buch des

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 2 (Remark 4, 5, 6).

das Schloß, the castle *nach* (with the dative), towards

1. The thought of man. 2. I have seen the hero, the count,
 and the prince. 3. The ox is a useful animal. 4. The castle of the
 prince. 5. The bear's skin. 6. Towards the South, towards the
 East. 7. To the heart of man. 8. I have seen a shepherd and a
 hero. 9. Towards the North and the West. 10. The feathers of the
 peacock are very beautiful. 11. The gentleman's hat. 12. To this
 gentleman.

Studenten. 11. Dem Knaben des Adjutanten. 12. Ich habe den Jesuiten gesehen.

8.

Universität (f.), university.

1. I have seen a giant. 2. To the student of the university. 3. We have seen a messenger of the king. 4. Have you seen an ape? 5. The country of the Briton. 6. The giant's boy. 7. The brother of the adjutant. 8. To the boy of the giant. 9. The book of the Jesuit. 10. To the lion of Africa. 11. He has seen the hare in my uncle's garden. 12. I have seen the Hungarian and the Briton.

9.

Rule 13.

schön, beautiful, pretty, *wo*, where. *Schwester*, sister.
sehr, very. [fine. *Königin*, queen. *abgereist*, departed.

1. Die Rose ist eine schöne Blume. 2. Haben Sie eine Mutter? 3. Hat dein Bruder eine Schwester? 4. Sie hat eine Uhr. 5. Deine Uhr ist sehr klein. 6. Meine Schwester ist krank. 7. Ich habe deine Mutter und seine Schwester gesehen. 8. Wo ist die Stadt Bury? 9. Die Stadt Bury ist in Lancashire. 10. Haben Sie die Königin gesehen. 11. Die Hand deiner Schwester ist schön. 12. Haben Sie die Blume meiner Mutter?

10.

1. The rose is a flower. 2. The flower of the garden. 3. My mother's hand. 4. The queen's town. 5. Have you a watch? 6. Is the rose a flower? 7. The queen has (is) departed. 8. This town is very large. 9. This watch is very beautiful.

10. Her hand is very small. 11. Where is thy mother and sister? 12. They are in the queen's garden.

11.

Rule 16.

<i>erhalten</i> , received.	<i>nützlich</i> , useful.	<i>gegeben</i> , given.
<i>Arzt</i> , physician.	<i>hoch</i> , high.	<i>reich</i> , rich.
<i>weisz</i> , white.	<i>rein</i> , clean.	<i>nicht</i> , not.
<i>immer</i> , always.	<i>glücklich</i> , happy.	<i>Thier</i> (n.), animal.

1. Die Berge dieses Landes sind hoch. 2. Die Ärzte dieser Stadt sind reich. 3. Seine Füße sind klein. 4. Ihre Zähne sind weisz. 5. Unsere Hände sind rein. 6. Wir haben keine Freunde. 7. Die Verzeichnisse dieser Städte. 8. Die Iünglinge dieser Universität. 9. Von den Bergen Englands. 10. In den Städten Frankreichs. 11. Die Könige sind nicht immer glücklich. 12. Den Ärzten dieser Stadt.

12.

1. To the mountains of England. 2. From the physicians of this town. 3. I have seen the kings of (von) England and of (von) France. 4. Have you given the catalogues to the youths? 5. Thy teeth are white. 6. Their hands are large. 7. Horses are useful animals. 8. There are (*Es gibt*) many youths in these towns. 9. Your friends are not happy. 10. Have you received the catalogues? 11. Her feet are small. 12. The mountains of this country.

13.

Rule 17, Remarks 7, 8, 9.

<i>Kleid</i> (n.), dress.	<i>Nachbar</i> , neighbour.	<i>Fasz</i> (n.), cask.
<i>Kind</i> (n.), child.	<i>Buch</i> (n.), book.	<i>Dorf</i> (n.), village.
<i>Dach</i> (n.), roof.	<i>Blatt</i> , (n.), leaf.	<i>Band</i> (n.), ribbon.

1. Die Kleider meiner Kinder. 2. Die Blätter dieser Bücher. 3. Diese Wörter sind kurz. 4. Die

Herzogthümer von Deutschland. 5. Die Reichthümer dieses Landes. 6. Die Bücher und die Verzeichnisse dieser Bibliothek. 7. Die Kinder meines Nachbarn. 8. Die Bänder meiner Schwester. 9. Die Götter der Griechen. 10. Die Dächer dieser Häuser. 11. Die Männer ~~dieser~~ Herzogthümer. 12. Die Gespenster and ~~die~~ Geister des Alterthums.

14.

Wald (m.), forest.

Welt (f.), world.

1. The books of the youth. 2. The children of my friends. 3. On the roofs of these houses. 4. In (acc.) the villages of these dukedoms. 5. The horses of the king are beautiful. 6. The animals of the forests. 7. The hides of the animals. 8. The works of these men. 9. The dresses and the ribbons of thy sister. 10. The leaves of the trees. 11. The riches of this world. 12. To the children of my neighbour.

15.

Rule 18, Remark 10.

gekauft, bought.

gefunden, found.

Onkel, uncle.

gelesen, read.

verkauft, sold.

Feder (f), pen.

• 1. Die Knaben haben zwei Affen von ihrem Onkel erhalten. 2. Die Studenten und die Philosophen dieser Stadt. 3. Haben Sie die Löwen von Afrika gesehen. 4. Meine Schwester hat viele Bibeln den Armen gegeben. 5. Haben Sie Nadeln gekauft. 6. Wir haben die Fabeln Gellert's gelesen. 7. Wo sind die Gabeln? 8. Die Knaben haben die Bothen des Königs gesehen. 9. Die Mütter und ihre Töchter sind in dem Garten. 10. Haben Sie Federn? 11. Ja, wir haben Federn und Nadeln. 12. Wo sind Ihre Fabeln?

16.

1. To the mothers and their daughters. 2. Has she found her needles. 3. I have lost my pens. 4. He has bought (some) forks. 5. We have seen giants and lions. 6. Hast thou seen the messengers of the prince. 7. The daughters have received pens and needles from their mother. 8. The boys have read the fables of La Fontaine. 9. The Jesuits of Italy. 10. Have you found any needles? 11. I have seen the students and the philosophers of this town. 12. From the Hungarians to the Britons.

17.

Rule 19 and Remark 11.

Nation (f.), nation.

Flusz (m.), river.

1. The duties of the boys. 2. The arts of England. 3. The fishings of these rivers. 4. The wives of these gentlemen. 5. The friendships of these nations. 6. The offences of this man. 7. The queens of Europe. 8. The subjects of England. 9. My cousins are your neighbours. 10. Have you received your boots and your shirts? 11. He opened (*öffnete*) his eyes and ears. 12. The answers of the queens.

18.

Rule 20.

Birne (f.), pear.

krank, ill.

reif, ripe.

Geben Sie, give.

todt, dead.

Federmesser (n.), penknife.

Gärtner, gardener.

Schneider, tailor.

Apfel (m.), apple.

Geld (n.), money.

Schuhmacher, shoemaker.

1. Hast du diese Blumen von den Gärtnern erhalten. 2. Heinrich hat seine Messer verloren. 3. Johann hat seine Vögel verkauft. 4. Wir haben

Messer, Gabeln und Löffel gekauft. 5. Den Vögeln der Wälder. 6. Die Knaben haben ihre Federmesser verloren. 7. Die Mädchen dieses Dorfes sind sehr schön. 8. Die Gärtner meines Vaters haben Vögel und Blumen. 9. Die Schuhmacher dieser Stadt und die Schneider jenes Dorfes. 10. Wo sind die Gärtner dieses Fürsten. 11. Die Äpfel und die Birnen sind reif. 12. Die Brüder des Grafen sind krank.

19.

1. The fathers and mothers of these children are dead. 2. The birds of the forests. 3. The girls of the villages. 4. The little book of my children. 5. The knives, spoons, and forks of these girls. 6. Have you seen the penknives of the boys? 7. The tailors and shoemakers of this town are very rich. 8. The gardeners of the prince have given us (*uns*) flowers. 9. Henry has lost my pens and penknives. 10. William has bought apples and John flowers. 11. Has William found his penknives? 12. Give this money to the shoemakers and tailors of this town.

20.

Rules 21, 22, 23.

Milch (f.), milk. *Zucker* (m.), sugar. *Strumpf* (m.), stocking.
Nusz (f.), nut. *Papier* (n.), paper. *Handschuh* (m.), glove.
Brod (n.), bread. *Länge* (f.), length. *Taschentuch* (n.), hand-
 For numbers, see page 23. [kerchief.]

1. Fünf Paar Strümpfe. 2. Sechs Pfund Zucker.
 3. Fünf Masz Milch. 4. Vier Buch Papier. 5. Fünf Schock Nüsse. 6. Drei Laib Brod. 7. Vier Fuss Länge. 8. Drei Dutzend Taschentücher. 9. Zwei

Paar Handschuhe. 10. Sechs Zoll Länge. 11. Die Liebe und die Hoffnung meines Freundes. 12. Die Männer, Leute und Mannen dieses Fürsten.

21.

Johann, John.

der Wein, wine.

1. Henry has received six pair of stockings. 2. Emily has bought four dozen of handkerchiefs. 3. John has found three score of nuts. 4. This house has twenty feet (in) length. 5. He has bought three loaves of bread. 6. My father has sent me four quarts of wine, five loaves of bread, and four pounds of sugar. 7. Three feet long. 8. Four pair of gloves. 9. Three dozen handkerchiefs. 10. Two dozen shirts. 11. The men and the people of this town. 12. The expenses of my house.

22.

Rules 24, 25, Remarks 18, 19. 20.

Georg, George. Karl, Charles. Geschwister, brother and sister. Tod (m.), death. Geburt (f.), birth. Regierung, reign.

1. John is the father of George. 2. The four Georges of England. 3. Frederik and Wilhelmine are brother and sister. 4. Give this book to John,

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 3 (Remarks 12, 13, 14).

Tuch (n.), cloth. Gold (n.), gold. es ist, it is.

Metall (n.), metal. Eisen (n.), iron. Regiment (n.), regiment.

1. I have bought six yards of cloth, three tons of iron, and twenty bottles of wine. 2. A regiment of five thousand men. 3. It is nine o'clock. 4. Five men strong (*stark*). 5. The kindnesses of your father. 6. The fortunes and the pleasures of the soldiers. 7. The sorrows of the people. 8. Gold and iron are metals. 9. Bread, water, wine, and meat sustain the human body. 10. The beautiful (thing) is not always the good (thing). 11. Reading is not knowing. 12. They suffer from (*Sie leiden an*) fevers and headaches.

and that pen to William. 5. Frederik's hat. 6. Louisa's thimble. 7. Give these needles to Louisa and these gloves to Bertha. 8. The birth and death of Christ. 9. Göthe's Faust and Schiller's Wallenstein. 10. The life of Doctor Martin Luther and of the philosopher Kant. 11. King Charles's death. 12. Queen Victoria's reign.

23.

Rule 26, Remark 21.

<i>Kaufmann</i> , merchant.	<i>Witwe</i> , widow.	<i>gleich</i> , equal.
<i>Neffe</i> , nephew.	<i>Witwer</i> , widower.	<i>Bürger</i> , citizen.
<i>Nichte</i> , niece.	<i>Monarch</i> , monarch.	<i>Hut</i> (m.), hat.

1. The queen of this country is a good monarch.
2. The wife of the tailor and the wife of the shoemaker are friends.
3. The wife of the merchant and the wife of the doctor are neighbours.
4. The gardener's wife is your sister's friend.
5. The lion and the lioness are very strong animals.
6. The count and the countess have three sons.
7. The nephew and the niece are ill.
8. Thy friend is an enchantress.
9. The princess and the shepherdess are equal after (*nach*, dat.) death.
10. The Duchess of Wellington is a noble lady (*edle*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 4 (Remarks 15, 16, 17).

<i>Fest</i> (n.), festival.	<i>Schule</i> (f.), school.
<i>christliche</i> , christian.	<i>meinen Sie</i> , do you mean.

1. Easter, Pentecost, Lent, and Christmas are Christian festivals.
2. Henri Webb and Brother.
3. His income is very small.
4. His parents are good people.
5. Has the tailor made (*gemacht*) you a pair of trowsers?
6. The troops of England.
7. The holidays of the school.
8. I have seen merchants, countrymen, carpenters, and Mussulmen.
9. The bailiffs are men of honour.
10. These are (*Das sind*) husband and wife.
11. I speak of (*Ich spreche von*) men, and not of wenches.
12. Do you mean ties, volumes, or ribbons?

Dame) of England. 11. The wife of the citizen is a friend of the gardener's wife. 12. She is a widow and he is a widower.

24.

Rules 27, 28, Remark 22.

1. John has a kitten and a puppy. 2. George has a pretty little carriage. 3. This is a very pretty little garden. 4. My dear little sister Emily. 5. To dear little Louisa. 6. Dear mother. 7. Beloved father. 8. My brother has given to Henry a pretty little bird. 9. Where is your little hat, Emily? 10. The father has given a pony to Wilhelmina. 11. Have you the umbrella and the thimble of the lady of the house? 12. The master of the house is in the town hall.

25.

Recapitulation on Rules 4 to 28.

<i>Wagen</i> (m), carriage.	<i>alt</i> , old.	<i>Hund</i> , dog.
<i>Sohn</i> , son,	<i>viele</i> , many.	<i>Katze</i> (f.), cat.
<i>Bibliothek</i> (f.), library.	<i>schlecht</i> , bad.	<i>Metall</i> (n.), metal.
<i>Pallast</i> (m.), palace.	<i>verloren</i> , lost.	<i>Glas</i> (n.), glass.
<i>Bleistift</i> (m.), pencil.	<i>Silber</i> (n.), silver.	<i>Schloß</i> (n.), castle.

1. My father and mother are in the garden of our neighbour's wife. 2. Your brothers and sisters have bought houses and gardens. 3. Where are the little knives²⁷ of my children? 4. I have given books and pens to our gardener's children, and my sister has given flowers and needles to the daughters of the physician's wife. 5. Have you seen the castle and the gardens of our princess? 6. I have bought the horses from the count, and the carriages from the countess. 7. William's books are old, and Emily's

pens are bad. 8. Where is your sister's kitten and your brother's puppy? 9. These boys have bought two catalogues of the king's library. 10. Our gardener's sons have dogs, cats, and birds. 11. Thy sister's friend (f.) has many flowers. 12. Have you seen the railways of England?

26.

1. The king's soldiers consist of (*bestehen aus*) twenty thousand men. 2. I have found two umbrellas and five thimbles. 3. Are these men students or philosophers? 4. They (*Das*) are jesuits and not our friends. 5. In the mountains of Italy dwell (*wohnen*) many shepherds and shepherdesses. 6. These girls have needles and those boys have books. 7. Dogs are faithful (*treue*) animals. 8. Frederik has bought five dozen of handkerchiefs and Emily has received six pair of gloves. 9. Dogs and horses are useful (*nützliche*) animals, and gold and silver are precious (*kostbare*) metals. 10. My sisters have lost their needles, and my brothers have found their pencils. 11. Men inhabit (*bewohnen*) little houses,⁷ palaces, castles, villages, towns, and forests. 12. You have bought glasses, knives, forks, and spoons.

27.

Rule 31.

<i>böse</i> , wicked.	<i>Tante</i> , aunt.	<i>schwarz</i> , black.
<i>unartig</i> , naughty.	<i>Brief</i> , (m.), letter.	<i>tapfer</i> , brave.
<i>Schimmel</i> , gray horse.	<i>ausgegangen</i> , gone out.	

1. I have seen the good brother and sister. 2. Give this pretty book to that little boy. 3. To the good uncle and aunt. 4. From the big boy and the little

girl. 5. The little John and the old Henry. 6. I have received two letters from William's old friend. 7. Where are the good girls and the naughty boys? 8. The brave soldiers of every good king. 9. The brave Henry has fought (*geschlagen*) the wicked Richard. 10. Where are the count's grey horses and black dogs? 11. We have seen the happy king and queen of England. 12. Give this flower to the pretty girl of the village.

28.

See Rule 32.

italienisch, Italian.*gelesen*, read.*Gesang* (m.), song.*französisch*, French.*deutsch*, German.*english*, English.

1. This is my little Henry's book. 2. Our little children have (are) gone out with their good aunt. 3. Have you read a French book? 4. She has read English books. 5. These (*Das*) are French and Italian works. 6. Give me a German book and an Italian song. 7. To our English forests. 8. Of their Italian villages. 9. I have seen your German towns. 10. A French count and an Italian countess. 11. Our

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 5 (Remark 25).—Explain the root and the derivation of the following adjectives:—

1. Ein *dankbarer* Sohn. 2. Die *fruchtbaren* Bäume. 3. Der *heilsame* Rath. 4. Ein *leinenes* Hemd. 5. Ein *lederner* Beutel. 6. Ein *fleisziger* Schüler. 7. Eine *steinichte* Birne. 8. Eine *steinige* Gegend. 9. *Himmliche* Freuden. 10. Ein *freundlicher* Grusz. 11. Ein *gewissenhafter* Diener. 12. Eine *leserliche* Schrift.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 6.

1. A marble staircase. 2. A silk dress. 3. A gold watch. 4. A wooden horse. 5. A sweetish apple. 6. A woody country. 7. A faulty exercise. 8. Violent means. 9. Serviceable animals. 10. Earthly goods. 11. A copper kettle. 12. An English book.

English princesses and your German princes. 12. A French soldier and an English philosopher. 13. No Italian shepherds and no French messengers.

29.

Rule 33.

<i>unglücklich</i> , unhappy.	<i>höflich</i> , polite.	<i>stark</i> , strong.
<i>Dame</i> , lady.	<i>grausam</i> , cruel.	<i>Tiger</i> (m.), tiger.

1. Tigers and lions are very cruel animals. 2. My brother's neighbour has bought two strong horses and a pretty carriage. 3. These boys have happy friends but unhappy brothers. 4. Your friends are very polite gentlemen. 5. The English soldiers are brave men. 6. We have bought five French books and six Italian songs. 7. Unhappy country! 8. I have seen small towns, great houses, and fine castles. 9. In this town there are (*gibt es*) fine houses and polite people. 10. He has happy brothers but unhappy sisters. 11. This English lady has very polite daughters. 12. The French prince has fine horses and carriages.

30.

Rule 34 and 35.

<i>Mond</i> (m.), moon.	<i>hell</i> , bright.	<i>aber</i> , but.
<i>Sonne</i> (f.), sun.	<i>scheint</i> , shines.	<i>Zimmer</i> (n.), room.
<i>Stern</i> (m.), star.	<i>als</i> , than.	<i>treu</i> , faithful.

Klasse (f.), class.

1. The moon is smaller than the sun. 2. The moon shines brighter than the stars, but the sun shines extraordinarily bright. 3. The dog is more faithful than the cat. 4. Lions are stronger than tigers, but tigers are more cruel than lions. 5. Thy brother is more diligent than our physician's son, but

Henry is the most diligent boy. 6. Louisa is the prettiest girl of the town. 7. Thy father is the most polite gentleman, and thy mother is the happiest lady. 8. I have seen the most happy boy and the most unhappy girl. 9. Thy brother is older than I, he is the eldest boy in our class. 10. The horse is more beautiful and more useful than the dog, but the dog is the most faithful animal. 11. You are politer than your brother, but your cousin is the politest gentleman in the town. 12. Is Charles a stronger boy than William? He is a stronger and a taller boy than William.

31.

Rule 37.

1. One thousand eight hundred and sixty-five. 2. Three hundred and seventy. 3. Four hundred and fifty-six. 4. One thousand five hundred and sixty-five. 5. Seven hundred and fifty-eight. 6. Nine

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 7 (Remark 31 (a) and (b)).

1. He is rather wiser than prudent. 2. This gentleman is extremely rich. 3. He is above all polite. 4. These ribbons are more green than blue. 5. Less rich than wise. 6. Our neighbour is very polite. 7. This water is very cold (as cold as ice). 8. This dress is very white (as white as snow). 9. The fox is uncommonly cunning. 10. This ink is very black (as black as a coal). 11. That boy is very stupid (arch stupid). 12. He is too unhappy.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 8 (Remark 31 (c), (d), (e)).

1. John is as rich as his neighbour William. 2. Emily is as learned as her sister Bertha. 3. John Klotz is by far richer than Martin Vosz. 4. She is much more unhappy than her friend. 5. Manchester is by far larger than Bury. 6. He is still happier than his uncle. 7. The queen is far more polite than the king. 8. The sun is much larger than the moon. 9. Most beloved father! 10. He has done his exercise the best. 11. He is less attentive than his friend. 12. William has not spoken in the least.

hundred and seventy-eight. 7. Three thousand four hundred and fifty-six. 8. One hundred and fifty-six. 9. One thousand and five. 10. Fifty thousand five hundred and five. 11. One thousand eight hundred and sixty-six. 12. Seven hundred and fifty-eight.

32.

Rule 32.

Jahrhundert (n.), century. *Woche* (f.), week. *leben*, live.

1. The first of April. 2. The sixth week. 3. John is the first, Emily the second, and William the third. 4. Four is the fifth part of twenty; eighteen is the tenth part of one hundred and eighty. 5. A month is the twelfth part of a year. 6. Emily is the seventh in the class. 7. We have to-day the seventeenth (acc.) of May. 8. The fifteenth (nom.) of June. 9. A minute is the sixtieth part of an hour. 10. Three is the third part of nine. 11. We live in the nineteenth century. 12. To-day is the . . . th of

33.

Rules 39, 40, 41, 42, 43.

1. Threefold and tenfold. 2. One-sixteenth and three-eighths. 3. Four times four are sixteen. 4. Five times ten are fifty. 5. Of three kinds and of

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 9 (Remarks 32, 33, 34).

1. This is the last (hindmost) man. 2. The last (most under) step. 3. The most inward voice. 4. The most outward sign. 5. The foremost part of the vessel. 6. This tree is higher, and that is the highest. 7. Bury is nearer Manchester than Bolton, but Prestwich is the nearest. 8. You have much money, your brother has more, and your father has the most. 9. John's book is good, Henry's is better, but William's is the best. 10. We have arrived sooner than you, but he arrived the soonest. 11. The (most) upper part of the house. 12. He does it for the best.

thirty kinds. 6. Five and a half; eight and a half; fifteen and a half. 7. Three-fifteenths and six-twelfths. 8. Twentyfold and a hundredfold. 9. Of seven kinds and of fifteen kinds. 10. One-half; one-third; one-fourth; one-fifth; one-sixth; one-seventh; one-eighth. 11. One and a half; three and a half; eighteen and a half. 12. Twelve times twelve are one hundred and forty four.

34.

Rule 44.

<i>Bein</i> (n.), leg.	<i>Sache</i> (f.), thing.	<i>gesagt</i> , said.
<i>Abschied</i> (m.), leave.	<i>heute</i> , to day.	<i>noch</i> , yet.

1. Dieser Soldat hat seine beiden Beine verloren. 2. Ich habe von Beiden Abschied genommen. 3. Diese beiden Brüder lieben sich sehr. 4. Wir haben es einem gewissen Herren und einer gewissen Dame gesagt. 5. Geben Sie mir einen anderen Hut und andere Handshuhe. 6. Viele Leute leben von Tag zu Tag. 7. Er hat wenige Freunde und kein Geld. 8. Haben die Kinder einige Bücher. 9. Ja, sie haben etliche. 10. Jeder Mensch musz einmal sterben. 11. Ich habe Schiller's sämtliche Werke gelesen. 12. Alles ist verloren.

 ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 10 (Remarks 35, 36, 37, 38).

1. Of two gentlemen and two ladies. 2. He has lost thousands. 3. He drives (*fährt mit*, acc.) four horses. 4. The one says (*sagt*) this, the other that. 5. He takes it (*nimmt es*) from the one, and gives it to the other. 6. Open both your eyes and ears. 7. This company consists of one hundred men. 8. She has bought six pounds of sugar, one pound of coffee, half a pound of tea, and a quarter of a pound of pepper. 9. Out of six I have chosen (*gewählt*) four. 10. Have you many books? 11. I have only one, but my brother has several. 12. We have found the books of two boys.

35.

1. The thing is not yet certain. 2. A certain boy and a certain girl have told me all. 3. One has said this, the other that. 4. Both gentlemen have said it (*es*). 5. I have received to-day several letters. 6. None of my friends has arrived. 7. Every man is mortal. 8. I have seen many men and women. 9. Have you some friends? 10. Yes (*Ja*), I have a few. 11. Few men are quite (*ganz*) happy. 12. All boys will have a holiday.

36.

Rule 46, Remarks 45 and 46.

geben, to give. *schreiben*, to write. *thun*, to do.

1. I have received it. 2. Have you seen him? 3. Yes; I have seen him and her. 4. Give these books to him and to her. 5. I will give you this penknife if you will give it to him. 6. I and thou shall go to Manchester. 7. He loves nobody but himself. 8.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 11 (Remarks 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44).

1. John is the first and Henry the last. 2. Emily came first and Louise the last. 3. The German Emperor, Charles V., died (*starb*) in the year 1558. 4. The 21st of June is the beginning (*der Anfang*) of summer. 5. The celebrated mariner, Cook, found (*fand*) his death on his third journey round (*um*) the world, on the 4th of February, 1779. 6. We have departed from Europe on the 17th of August, 1864, and have arrived in China on the 12th of January, 1865. 7. What o'clock is it? It is six. It is a quarter past six. It is a quarter to six. 8. It is noon. It is midnight. 9. A year has two half-years, four quarters, twelve months, fifty-two weeks, and three hundred and sixty-five days. 10. A week has seven days; a day has twenty-four hours; an hour has sixty minutes; and a minute has sixty seconds. 11. He has much money but little honour. 12. He drinks much wine and little water. 13. The whole of Manchester and half of Salford. 14. The whole people of England.

Do this (*Thuen Sie es*) on my account, if you will not do (*nicht thun wollen*) it for his sake. 9. I have come to town on thy account. 10. Give it to me and not to him. 11. Write (*Schreibe*) to me and not to her. 12. You and he will give it to her.

37.

Observe that the negation is usually placed after the pronouns.

1. I have not given it to her but to you. 2. They will not write to me and to thee. 3. We will not do it on her account but on his. 4. Do not write to us. 5. I will not give you that book ; I will give it to your brother. 6. Neither (*weder*) he nor (*noch*) I will write to you. 7. I shall not do it on thy account but on mine. 8. I have not seen her. 9. She has not bought it for him. 10. He has not lost it. 11. I and he have not seen it. 12. Has she not received it ?

38.

schweigen, to be silent.

1. Wer ist weiser gewesen als Sokrates, der weise Philosoph ? 2. Ich spreche von einem dieser Schüler. Von welchem ? 3. Was vermag der Mensch ohne die Hülfe Gottes ? 4. An wen haben sie gedacht ? 5. Wen wird derjenige lieben, der seine Ältern nicht liebt ? 6. Wessen erinnert man sich öfter als eines theueren Freundes ? 7. Von wem sprechen Sie ? 8. Warum schweigen Sie ? 9. Was hilft dir das Weinen ? 10. Welcher Herr und welche Frau ist hier gewesen ? 11. Welcher Knabe ist belohnt und welcher bestraft worden ? 12. Welche Bücher haben Sie gekauft ?

39.

Schlacht (f.), battle.

1. What is man without reason (*Vernunft*)? 2. Which boys have you seen? 3. He has bought one of these books. Which? 4. To whom do you write? 5. Of (*von*, dat.) whom do you speak? 6. Whose pen is it? 7. Which ladies have you seen? 8. Through (*durch*, acc.) which towns have you come? 9. In which of the battles has (*is*) your son been wounded (*verwundet*)? 10. What have you bought? 11. What do you want (*wollen*)? 12. Whose thimble is this?

40.

Rule 48, Remark 50.

lasset, let. *Vermögen*, fortune. *Fräulein* (n.), young lady.
eigen, own. *Leben* (n.), life. *Schüler*, pupil.

1. Deine Schwester liebt ihre Kinder weniger als die deinigen und die meinigen. 2. Lasset jedem das Seine, und man wird euch das Eurige lassen. 3. Unser Nachbar ist so geizig, dass er seinen eigenen Kindern nichts gibt. 4. Du hast dein Vermögen vermehrt, und ich habe das meinige verloren. 5. Das ist nicht meine, sondern deine Schuld (fault). 6. Deine Schwestern sprechen immer von meinen Fehlern und erkennen (acknowledge) ihre nicht. 7. Wenn du

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 12 (Remark 49).—1. What sort of man is your friend? 2. What sort of books? 3. What sort of people? 4. I have bought a horse. What kind of one? 5. She has sold a watch. What sort of one? 6. What a blockhead (*Dummkopf*). 7. What a curious man (*merkwürdiger Mensch*). 8. What sort of shirts have you bought? 9. What sort of a girl is she? 10. We have seen a messenger. What messenger? 11. What nonsense! to speak thus (*so*). 12. What a miser! (*Geizhals*).

nicht immer von den ihrigen sprächest, würde sie auch nicht non den deinen sprechen. 8. Ich kenne (know) weder deine noch seine Ältern. 9. Meine Schwester hat ihren und meinen Ring verloren. 10. Er hat seine Uhr verkauft und ich habe die meinige verloren. 11. Ich habe est nicht deinetwegen sondern (but) seinetwegen gethan. 12. Ich werde mein Leben nicht preis geben um das deine zu retten.

41.

1. I have seen thy father and mine. 2. She has lost her books and her brother's. 3. Our mother has seen your children and theirs. 4. I have sold my house and his. 5. Thy uncle has seen my children and thine. 6. Have you sold your horses and your brother's? 7. The king has seen our country and yours. 8. Is that young lady a pupil of yours? 9. I have found a book of yours amongst mine. 10. A brother of mine arrived yesterday (*gestern*) from Paris. 11. Whose house is this? It was my uncle's; it is no longer (*mehr*) his, it is ours. 12. This horse is mine and that is his.

42.

Rules 50 and 51.

welcher, which. *vergeben*, to forgive. *Handlung* (f.), action.

1. Ist dies das Buch, welches Ihnen mein Freund geliehen hat? 2. Es ist nicht dasselbe, est ist das, welches Ihr Bruder mir geliehen hat. 3. Das ist dieselbe Strasse wodurch wir gekommen sind. 4. Wohnen (live) Sie in demselben Hause? 5. Derjenige, welcher reich ist, ist nicht immer zufrieden. 6. Die,

welche am wenigsten wünschen (*wish*), sind am reichsten und zufriedensten. 7. Sprich nicht von dem, was sich in dem Hause deines Nachbarn zuträgt (*happens*); denn du wünschst, dass man auch nicht von dem spreche, was sich in dem deinigen zuträgt. 8. Wissen Sie den Titel dieses Buches? 9. Ich erinnere mich (*remember*) dessen nicht mehr. 10. Kennen (*know*) Sie den Herrn Jacobs, dessen Frau todt ist. 11. Dieser Knabe und jenes Mädchen haben es gesagt (*said*). 12. Solche Bücher sind schwer zu haben (*difficult to get*). 13. Spreche nie von dem, was du schlecht weisst oder was du nicht weisst.

43.

vergeben, to forgive. *leicht*, easily.

1. Death often separates (*scheidet*) us from that which is dearest to us. 2. We do not easily forgive those who make fun of us (*sich über uns lustig machen*). 3. My horse is better than that of my neighbour. 4. Give me this book and that pen. 5. I have bought such a house and (such a) garden. 6. We have received your letter and that of your friend. 7. This is not your pencil, it is my brother's (that of my brother). 8. Is that your house, or your friend's (that of your

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 13 (Remark 52).

1. These are Englishmen, and not Germans (*Deutsche*). 2. It is the shoemaker, it is I. 3. Is that your house, or John's (that of John)? 4. This is a dog, and that is a cat. 5. Give me this, and I will give you that. 6. This is for us, and that for you. 7. Have you friends? Yes; I have many (of them). 8. Have you any money? Yes; I have enough (of it). 9. I have bought six pair of gloves; three (of them) I gave to my friend. 10. We have received a dozen bottles of wine; five (of them) we have sent (*geschickt*) to our mother. 11. Tell me what that is? This is paper; and that is ink (*Tinte*).

friend)? 9. The physician has bought my garden and my neighbour's. 10. This gentleman and that lady have seen the castle of the king and that of the prince. 11. He who is ill, is unhappy. 12. She who stands at the window, is my sister.

44.

Flügel (m.), wing. *wissen*, to know. *Verwandte*, relations. *Denkmal* (n.), monument. *Leben* (n.), live. *errichtet*, erected.

1. Die Erde welche wir bewohnen (inhabit) ist nur ein sehr kleiner Theil der Welt. 2. Es hat grosse Männer gegeben die während ihres ganzen Lebens in Dürftigkeit schmachteten (languished in indigence), und denen man nach ihrem Tode Denkmäler errichtet hat. 3. Wir haben ein Haus, welches sehr gross ist. 4. Diese Kinder haben einen Vater, den sie lieben und ehren and für dessen Gesundheit sie täglich (daily) zu Gott beten. 5. Haben sie den Ring gefunden, den mein Bruder Karl verloren hat. 6. Die Reichthümer, die er besitzt (possesses), sind unermesslich (immense). 7. Eben derselbe Herr,

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 14.

1. The very same lady has given it to me. 2. I have bought this very book, and that very pen. 3. Why do you break (*brechen*) your bread? We have no knife; therefore (for that reason) we break it. 4. The fables of La Fontaine are better known than those of Florian; the former are preferred to the latter. 5. Schiller and Goëthe were both great poets; the former was also a philosopher, and the latter a historian (*Historiker*). 6. Such an action does (*macht*) you honour. 7. I have never seen the like of which. 8. To make such outlays (*die Ausgabe*) one must (*muß man*) be very rich. 9. Who is that? It is my friend's nephew. 10. What is this? It is gold, and not silver. 11. That is Mrs. Nash, one of my best friends. 12. These are the Misses Strubes, my sister's friends.

dessen Hut Sie sehen können, ist hier gewesen. 8. Das Mädchen, deren Arbeit auf dem Tische liegt, ist krank. 9. Der Elefant ist eines von den Thieren, deren Gelehrigkeit (docility) man bewundert. 10. Es gibt Vögel, deren Flügel zum Fluge nicht geeignet (proper) sind. 11. Wer weisz dasz er nichts weisz, weisz mehr als der, welcher alles zu wissen glaubt (believes). 12. Wer zu viel gewinnen (win) will, wird nichts gewinnen.

45.

blau, blue. Ehrlichkeit (f.), honesty. hinreichend, sufficient.

1. The books which we read are very good. 2. Have you relations? Yes; I have some. 3. Has she friends? Yes; she has some. 4. The money he has, is barely (*kaum*) sufficient to (*um ein*) buy a house. 5. The parents we love, and the friends we admire (*bewundern*). 6. He who is poor has few friends. 7. Where is the pencil which you have bought? 8. The lady whose bonnet (*der Hut*) is blue. 9. The man whose honesty I know (*kenne*). 10. The boy to whom you have given a book, has been here. 11. What I have, I give (*gebe*) you. 12. He who does not work, ought (*soll*) also not to eat (*essen*).

46.

<i>Fehler (f.), fault.</i>	<i>Erde (f.), earth.</i>	<i>Dorn (m.), thorn.</i>
<i>ohne, without.</i>	<i>je mehr,</i>	} the more.
<i>Aufgabe (f.), exercise.</i>	<i>desto mehr,</i>	
		<i>Pflicht, duty.</i>

1. Sie sind nie mit jemand zufrieden. 2. Keiner ist ohne Fehler und glücklich vor dem Tode. 3. Keine Rosen ohne Dornen. 4. Je mehr man weisz, desto mehr sieht man, dasz man nichts weisz. 5.

Mancher glaubt (believes) viele Freunde zu haben, und hat keine, und manche Menschen glauben, andere zu betrügen (to deceive) und betrügen sich selbst. 6. Wenn jedermann seine Pflichten erfüllte (fulfilled), wenn Niemand Böses thäte, und wenn die Menschen immer einander liebten; so würde diese Erde ein Paradies sein. 7. Ich habe Niemand gesehen. 8. Siehst du (dost thou see) jemand in dem Garten? 9. Der eine und der andere haben ihre Aufgaben gemacht. 10. Keiner von beiden wird die Belohnung (prize) erhalten. 11. Man muß einander beistehen (assist). 12. Man ist gleich (equal) nach dem Tode.

47.

weiss, knows.

Schicksal (n.), fate.

1. No one is always happy. 2. No one knows the fate that awaits (*erwartet*) him. 3. Everybody loves (*liebt*) and esteems (*ehrt*) him. 4. No one is happier than he who has no enemies; but is there (*gibt es*) anyone who has none. 5. No one knows when he must die (*sterben muß*). 6. Somebody has been here. 7. I have seen some one. 8. Have they both been here (*hier*). 9. The one and the other have (*sind*) departed. 10. None of the two is at home (*zu Hause*). 11. What sort of book shall (*soll*) I buy you? Any one. 12. The one says this, and the other that. They say so (*es*).

48.

1. Ich kann (can) mich nicht dazu entschlieszen (decide). 2. Das ist es, worüber ich mich freue (rejoice). 3. Ich habe keine Zeit (time) dazu. 4. Sprechen Sie vom Balle? Ja wir sprechen davon. 5. Du verdienst

(earn) nicht das Geld, womit du bezahlt wirst (art paid). 6. Woher kommen Sie? 7. Ich danke (thank) Ihnen dafür. 8. Es wird nichts daraus. 9. Ich bin damit zufrieden. 10. Er bittet (begs) mich darum. 11. Du hast keine Ursache dich darüber zu beklagen. 12. Ich werde Sie dahin begleiten (to accompany). 13. Wir wissen wohl, wo wir sind, aber wir wissen nicht wohin wir kommen werden, noch woher wir gekommen sind. 14. Fürchtet (fear) nicht den Tod, denkt (think) daran and seid immer darauf vorbereitet. 15. Wodurch ist dieser Mann so unglücklich geworden?

49.

Lust (f.), mind.

1. I have no mind for it (that). 2. What do you use (*brauchen Sie*) that for? 3. With what have you made this? 4. At the same time (thereby) he saw (*sah*) me. 5. Whom do you take (*halten*) me for? 6. What do you know (*kennen Sie*) that by? 7. What is (*soll*) this for? 8. Whence do you come (*kommen Sie*)? 9. Whither do you go? 10. I think (*denke*) of it. 11. You speak of it. 12. We are pleased with it. 13. They think of it. 14. They beg (*bitten*) me for it. 15. They accompany her there.

SECOND SECTION.

50.

See Auxiliary Verbs, pages 38 and 39.

Glück (n.), good luck. *Unglück* (n.), ill luck. *Matrose*, sailor.

1. We have a good father. 2. You shall be happy. 3. They will become rich. 4. I have been to (*in der*)

town. 5. They have had good luck. 6. He has had ill luck. 7. We shall have been to London. 8. They shall have become soldiers. 9. John has become (a) sailor. 10. You have had a golden ring. 11. We shall have had pretty birds. 12. You shall have a friend.

51.

Advocat, lawyer.

Schüler, scholar.

1. We are very unhappy. 2. They were in the garden. 3. You had a good penknife. 4. We were becoming students. 5. You shall have a diligent brother. 6. You will be punished (*bestraft*). 7. Thy brother will become (a) lawyer. 8. They will become philosophers. 9. Henry has become (an) adjutant. 10. The boy was praised (*gelobt*). Emily was rewarded (*belohnt*). 11. Bertha will become a scholar. 12. Louisa will be my friend.

52.

Schule (f.), school.

1. Be (s.) good. 2. Have (pl.) this money. 3. Become (ye) students. 4. To have had a book. 5. To have been a count. 6. To have become a rich man. 7. Thou shalt have been industrious. 8. We shall have had flowers and birds. 9. The boys shall have become students of the school. 10. That I may have money. 11. That thou mayest be rich. 12. That we may become happy.

53.

1. If I had had a father. 2. If you had been in Manchester. 3. If he had become a Jesuit. 4. That

I may have had a good sister. 5. That she may have been polite. 6. That the gardener might have had pretty flowers. 7. That the king's soldiers might have been brave. 8. If I shall have an apple. 9. If she shall be at (*in dat.*) school. 10. When (*Wenn*) my brother shall have become (an) adjutant. 11. If I were happy. 12. If they had money.

54.

Remark 59.

Hauptman, captain.

Einfluss (m.), influence.

1. I would be in (*auf dat.*) the country. 2. She would have had a nice (*schön*) book. 3. They would become captains, if they had influence. 4. We would have friends, if we had money. 5. She would be modest (*bescheiden*), if she were prudent. 6. He would have become (an) adjutant, if he had had more friends. 7. We would have been at home, if our relations had arrived. 8. George would have had a prize, if he had been more industrious. 9. They would become rich, if they were more prudent. 10. Mr. Nollet would have become a philosopher, if he had studied (*studiert*) more. 11. They would have friends, if they were more modest. 12. I would have been in town, if I had had time to go there (*dahinzugehen*).

55.

Rule 62.

neu, new.

1. Have I a new dress? 2. Is thy brother in the room? 3. Shall I become a sailor? 4. Shall we have had an umbrella? 5. Shall you have been industrious? 6. Had you bought the neighbour's

horses? 7. Had they been unhappy? 8. Was he in my father's garden? 9. Did he become (imp.) rich or poor? 10. If I were (were I) richer. 11. If he had (had he) money. 12. Shall you become a physician?

56.

Rule 63.

1. I shall not have a good horse. 2. You will not be in (the) town. 3. She will not become a scholar. 4. They will not have become philosophers. 5. We would not have had a French book, if your uncle had not given it us. 6. We shall not be unhappy. 7. Thou shalt not become a philosopher. 8. She had not had her lesson (*ihre Stunde*). 9. The king will not have had good soldiers. 10. The prince will not become (a) king. 11. The count has not become (a) prince. 12. The moon is not so large as some of (*von* dat.) the stars.

57.

Rules 64, 65.

<i>lachen</i> , to laugh.	<i>arbeiten</i> , to work.	<i>machen</i> , to make, to do.
<i>kaufen</i> , to buy.	<i>sehen</i> , to see.	<i>jagen</i> , to expel, to hunt.
<i>verkaufen</i> , to sell.	<i>sagen</i> , to say.	<i>zeigen</i> , to shew.
<i>strafen</i> , to punish.	<i>Lehrer</i> , master.	<i>leiten</i> , to lead.

1. Why do you laugh at (*über*) everything (that) I say? 2. I laugh because (*weil*) everything (that) you say is ridiculous (*lächerlich*). 3. The master says that you always laugh during (*während*, gen.) the class. 4. What do you buy, and what does he sell? 5. I buy horses, and he sells books, paper, pens, and ink. 6. Who has told it you? Nobody has told it me. 7. What does Henry do? He does his exercises. 8.

The father punishes his son because he is not good (*unartig*) and industrious. 9. What are Emily and her sisters doing? They are working in the little summer-house (*das Lusthaus*). 10. Philip the Fair banished all Jews (*Jude*) from his kingdom (*das Königreich*). 11. Shew me what you have done, and I will tell you what you ought (*sollen*) to do. 12. See that little dog leading (who leads) that old blind man.

58.

flüchtig, diligent. *Thaler* (m.), dollar. *Lärm* (m.), noise.
Gefangene, prisoner. *Festung* (f.), fortress. *achten*, to esteem.

1. This exercise can not be done so easily (*leicht*).
 2. The boy has been punished by his master, because he was idle (*faul*). 3. All the Jews have been banished by Philip the Fair from his kingdom. 4. This old blind man has been led by that little dog. 5. This horse has been sold for 300 Thalers. 6. This exercise is very well done; but that one must (*muß*) be done over again (*noch einmal*). 7. The whole class has been punished, because some of the scholars have made too much (*zu viel*) noise. 8. Henry is loved and praised by his friends, because he is a good and industrious boy. 9. Wilhelm is praised by his master; and his brother Ernest is punished, because he will not do his exercises. 10. The prisoners have been led to (*auf* acc.) the fortress. 11. My son, be loved by thy parents and esteemed by thy friends, and you will be happy. 12. He has been banished (*aus* dat.) the country.

59.

First Class of Irregular Verbs.

gewöhnlich, usually. *Fehler* (m.), fault, error.

1. Er mag thun was er will, aber sein Bruder musz thun was ich ihm befehle. 2. Thue deine Pflicht, was auch die Menschen von dir sagen mögen. 3. Du sagst: ich kann es nicht, aber ich weisz, du willst es nicht. 4. Wolle es nur und du wirst es können. 5. Thut nicht andern, was ihr nicht wollet, dasz man euch thäte. 6. Wenn alle Menschen thun könnten was sie wollen, so könnte niemand thun was er soll. 7. Was du auch thun mögest, du wirst diesen Fehler nie wieder gut machen können. 8. Du könntest deine Aufgabe wohl besser machen, wenn du nur wolltest. 9. Du würdest anders gehandelt haben, wenn du gewuszt hättest, was du jetzt weizt. 10. Wenn ihr mehr wüsztet, würdet ihr weniger sprechen; gewöhnlich sprechen diejenigen, welche nichts wissen, am meisten. 11. Lasz ihn thun, was er will. 12. Ich bedarf seines Rathes nicht.

60.

wünschen, to wish. *hoffen*, to hope. *Korb* (m.), basket.
erlauben, to allow. *schicken*, to send. *Gesicht* (n.), face.

1. It seemed to me that the fire was yet burning at six o'clock in the morning. 2. You may think what you like; but you must not say what you would like. 3. They ought to know their lessons (*die Lektion*) better than they do. 4. I am in need of a servant; can you recommend me one? 5. I send you the book (that) you wished for; I hope you will think of reading (to read) it attentively. 6. Allow me to turn the leaf of

the book. 7. Would you have the power (imp.) to do that work in a fortnight? 8. I can do it in about (*ohngefähr*) ten days. 9. What is he doing? He does nothing but run and play. 10. They brought and sent in baskets much of the beautiful fruit of their extensive (*ausgedehnt*) gardens. 11. Are you obliged to do it? No, I am not obliged to do it; I may do it, or leave it, as I like; but, as I can do it, I will do it. 12. He turned his face and ran away.

61.

Second Class of Irregular Verbs.

Waffen (f.), arms. *siegen*, to conquer. *Schlachtfeld* (n.), battle field. *bluten*, to bleed. *antworten*, to answer. *wegwerfen*, to throw away.

1. Meine Schwester liest französisch alle Tage. 2. Xerxes liesz dem Leonidas sagen: "Übergib mir deine Waffen" Dieser aber antwortete ihm: "Komm und hole sie." 3. Der General befiehlt den Soldaten. 4. Man fand ihn blutend auf dem Schlachtfelde. 5. Cäsar schrieb an den Senat: "Ich kam, ich sah, ich siegte." 6. Er nahm ihn beim Kragen (collar) und schmiesz (4th class) ihn hinaus. 7. Kommen Sie herein, meine Freunde, und nehmen Sie Platz (seat). 8. Er gab mir alles, worum ich ihn gebeten habe. 9. Er begann seine Studien (studies) und der Lehrer hat ihm empfohlen nicht nur viel zu lesen aber auch darüber nachzudenken und es zu fühlen. 10. Sprich wenig and sehe viel. 11. Er brach seinen Stock und warf ihn weg (to throw away, 2nd class). 12. Er sah seinen Freund und sagte zu ihm: Gustav, gib mir deine Hand.

62.

Weg (m.), way. *Fasz* (n.), cask. *menschlich*, human.
Mündung (f.), month. *leeren*, to empty. *Vaterland* (n.), country.

1. He took the boy by the hand and helped him to begin his work. 2. He disappeared all at once (*auf einmal*). 3. The cask leaks; we must empty it. 4. He stands in the garden, and she sits by the window. 5. He won the great prize (*das Loos*), and gave it to his sister. 6. He spoke in general (*im allgemeinen*) of human errors (*Gebrechen*). 7. I wished him to take tea with us, but he said he had no time. 8. He eats too little, therefore he recovers but slowly (*nur langsam*). 9. I found him sitting by the fire when (*als*) I spoke to him: Come with me, we will go and see what can be done. 10. He is terrified at the least noise (*das Geräusch*), and begins to scream (third class). 11. London lies almost (*beinahe*) at the mouth of the Thames. 12. The three hundred Lacedemonians did not run away, they died for their country.

63.

Third Class of Irregular Verbs.

in ein Horn blasen, to act in concert with one *laut*, loud

1. Wie heisst deine Schwester? 2. Meine Schwester heisst Emilie und ich heisse Johann. 3. Er bläst mit ihm in ein Horn. 4. Wir schliefen sehr gut die vorige Nacht. 5. Was räthst du mir zu thun? 6. Das gefällt uns gar nicht. 7. Er hielt einen Vogel in der Hand und schrie mit lauter Stimme. 8. Johann hiesz Heinrich gehen, aber ich rieth ihnen, dass es besser wäre, wenn sie zusammen blieben. 9. Es

scheint, es wäre besser, wenn ich ihn miede. 10. Der Apfel fällt nicht weit von dem Stamme (tree): sagt ein altes Sprichwort. 11. Er verzieh mir meine Schuld, (proverb) deszhalb will ich ihn ehren und preisen. 12. Er schrieb und las den ganzen Tag.

64.

<i>Weib</i> (n.), wife.	<i>hart</i> , hard.	<i>Loos</i> (n.), fate.
<i>Farbe</i> (f.), colour.	<i>ergreifen</i> , to seize.	<i>Seide</i> (f.), silk.
<i>Sprache</i> (f.), language.	<i>Kaninchen</i> (n.), rabbit.	<i>Stock</i> (m.), stick.
<i>Schlaf</i> (m.), sleep.	<i>Trompette</i> (f.), trumpet.	<i>Erde</i> (f.), earth.
<i>Gesellschaft</i> (f.), society.	<i>Koch</i> , cook.	<i>langsam</i> , slow.
<i>um Gottes Willen</i> , for God's sake.		<i>Seil</i> (n.), rope.

1. Will you kindly show me the way to Liverpool? 2. Sleep your sleep, ye grand of the earth! 3. Avoid the society of this wicked man. 4. It pleases me in (auf dat.) the country. I shall stop there for (während) three months. 5. He runs too fast, tell (heissen) him to walk (gehen) slow. 6. He wrote to me from Berlin, and it seems that he is not pleased there (it him there not pleases.) 7. You do not hold the rope fast enough (fest genug); you will fall. 8. The cooks were yet roasting the meat in the camp when the alarm (der Lärm) was sounded. 9. He screamed, and called with a loud voice: For God's sake help a poor unhappy (man). 10. As soon (sobald) as he went to sleep, we remained silent (still). 11. A hard fate forces me to part with my wife and children. 12. He lent me his umbrella, and I gave him my penknife.

65.

Fourth Class of Irregular Verbs.

1. Diese jungen Damen befeizzen sich der deutschen und der französischen Sprachen. 2. Die Farbe dieser

Seide ist verblichen. 3. Das arme Kind litt ungemein viel, ein toller (mad) Hund hat es gebissen. 4. Er ergriff ihn mit einer Hand und schnitt ihm mit der anderen die Kehle ab. 5. Er gibt dem Einem, was er dem anderen nimmt. 6. Ein gewisser Herr gab heute Morgens meiner Schwester eine schöne Rose. 7. Er befeizigt sich es zu thun, aber es scheint ihm nicht zu gelingen. 8. Schmeissen Sie diesen Apfel weg (away), er ist nicht gut. 9. Er schnitt sich in den Finger. 10. Er griff nach dem Messer und schnitt damit den Stock. 11. Der Hut hängt auf dem Nagel, nimm ihn herunter, Heinrich.

66.

Dieb, thief. *behalten*, to keep. *zerreißen*, to tear up.
Flusz (m.), river. *Strasse* (f.), street. *Stein* (f.), stone.
Bein (n.), leg. *heruntergleiten*, to glide down. *Kirche* (f.), church.

1. Apply yourself to the study of the German language; it will be very useful to you in after life (*in der Folge*). 2. He tears up his books, and throws stones in (*auf*, dat.) the street; he is a naughty boy; he must be punished. 3. My father caught a thief in the act (*auf der That*). 4. He went home (*nach Hause*); and they went to the (*ins*, concert. 5. He bit off his nails, and cut off his hair. 6. Have you compared the two books?—which will you keep? 7. We glided down the mountains, and went along (*längs*, gen.) the river. 8. The dog bit his finger, and seized him by (*nach*, dat.) the leg. 9. Our soldiers have suffered in the Crimea great hunger and many privations (*Mangel*). 10. He yields to temptation (*die Versuchung*), and cannot avoid the society of that wicked

man. 11. Where do you go? I go to (*in die*) school; and my brother goes to church. 12. She went to (*zu dat.*) her aunt, when I saw her.

67.

Fifth Class of Irregular Verbs.

über alle Maszen, beyond measure. *Bitte* (f.), prayer. *See* (f.), sea. *Urtheil* (n.), judgment. *Fleisch* (n.), meat. *Bart* (m.), beard. *Schaf* (n.), sheep. *Schäfer*, shepherd. *Welle* (f.), wave.

1. Der Hund bellt, der Fisch schwimmt, der Vogel fliegt, und der Mensch spricht. 2. Dieser Kaufmann betrügt jederman, er hat uns vergangene (last) Woche zwei Mal betrogen. 3. Er focht fürs Vaterland und starb als ein Held. 4. Erwäge zuerst und dann handle. 5. Der Mensch trinkt, aber wenn er über alle Maszen trinkt dann sagt man "er säuft." 6. Von einem Thiere aber sagt man immer "es säuft" und nicht "es trinkt." 7. Der Schäfer hat die Schafe geschoren. 8. Man sagt "er hat seinen Bart beschoren" aber "er hat mir diese Bitte beschert." 9. Die hohe See schwoll auf einmal (of a sudden) in ungeheure (monstrous) Wellen. 10. Gesottenes Fleisch ist eine nahrhafte Speise (nourishing food) für die Kranken. 11. Es verdrieszt ihn, das Spiel (game) zu verlieren. 12. Man verzieh die Vollziehung (execution) des Urtheils um den Gefangenen seiner Schuld (gilt) völlig zu überführen. 13. Riechen Sie diese Rose; riecht sie nicht schön?

68.

Treue (f.), fidelity. *Arbeit* (f.), labour. *Einsamkeit* (f.), solitude. *Eid* (m.), oath. *ländlich*, rural. *sich gut unterhalten*, to enjoy oneself. *Hügel* (m.), hill. *reisend*, rapidly. *Gesandte*, ambassador.

1. It oppresses my heart, when I think of (*über*, acc.)

his misfortune. 2. If he pinches my (me in the) arm, I will pinch his nose. 3. This flower smells beautifully; have you smelt it? 4. He poured out a glass of water; will you drink it? 5. In that rural solitude he enjoyed the fruits of his labours. 6. The worm creeps, because it (he) cannot walk (*gehen*); but many men creep, although (*obgleich*) they can and ought to walk. 7. The water flows rapidly down (*herab*) the hills of Scotland. 8. He bent the stick until (*bis*) it broke. 9. The dogs barked the whole night; what was the matter? 10. He swore the oath of fidelity to the king and the constitution. 11. The king bid him to (*zu*) come, and chose him as (*zu*, dat.) his ambassador. 12. He induced me to accompany him to the (*ins*) theatre, but I did not enjoy myself there.

69.

Sixth Class of Irregular Verbs

Korn (n.), rye. *Waizen* (m.), wheat. *in Ohnmacht fallen*, to faint.
Salz (n.), salt. *Kuchen* (m.), cake. *beten*, to pray (to say).
Holz (n.), wood. *schwach*, weak. *Bildness* (n.), likeness.
grün, green. *Wäsche*, linen. *Art* (f.), hatchet.

1. Du bist ein unartiger Knabe du schlägst immer meinen Bruder, du wirst von deinem Vater gestraft werden. 2. Dein Bruder hat uns gestern ins Theater gefahren, aber er fuhr uns so schlecht, dasz meine Schwestern sehr erschracken und beinahe (almost) in Ohnmacht fielen. 3. Der Bäcker bäckt Brod und Kuchen. 4. Sie hat ihre Hände gefaltet und betete das Vaterunser (Lord's Prayer). 5. Man sagt: Der Waizen is gemahlen; aber: das Bildnisz der Königin is gemahlt. 6. Gott schuf in sechs Tagen Himmel und Erde und Alles was darin ist. 7. Hier wächst

gutes Korn aber schlechter Waizen. 8. Die Magd wäscht meine Wäsche und die meines Bruders; soll sie auch die Ihrige waschen? 9. Der Bauer spaltet das Holz mit der Axt. 10. Wir sind zum Nachtessen (supper) bei der Frau Generalin eingeladen. 11. Mein Freund trägt grüne Brillen, weil seine Augen sehr schwach sind. 12. Der ganze Wagen war mit Salz geladen.

70.

Hafer (m.), oats. *Gerste* (f.), barley. *vergehen*, pass away.
Pflanze (f.), plant. *Müller*, miller. *Kummer* (m.), sorrow.
Pastete (f.), pie. *Keller* (m.), cellar. *spazieren fahren*, to
Bitte (f.), request. *Ebenbild* (n.), image. *drive* (for a walk.)
wehrlos, defenceless. *Fleisch* (n.), meat. *eigen*, own.

1. Has the meat been already salted, or will the cook salt it now (*jetzt*)? 2. My sister bakes all the cakes and pies for the whole family. 3. Will you drive your sister and her friend (for a walk)? 4. I will drive them (for a walk) if they will comply with my request. 5. The miller grinds rye, wheat, barley, and oats. 6. The young officer has painted my aunt's likeness. 7. God has created man in his own image. 8. Henry always beats his little dog; we must not beat defenceless animals. 9. Men, animals and plants, grow and pass away. 10. Have you already washed yourself? Yes, mother; I was washing myself when you went down (*hinuntergingen*). 11. Has the gardener chopped the wood in the cellar? 12. Everybody must carry his sorrows (dat. sing.) as well as he can.

71.

Rule 70.

vermehrten, to increase. *ungeheur*, immense. *missen*, to miss.
vorübergehen, to pass by. *Zunge* (f.), tongue. *übrig*, left.
Domkirche (f.), cathedral. *Strasze* (f.), street. *Reihe* (f.), row.
Fischerhütte (f.), fisherman's hut. *sich verrechnen*, to misreckon.
Beichtiger, confessor. *glauben*, to believe. *zeigen*, to shew.
Schnelligkeit (f.), quickness. *Krone* (f.), crown. *Strafe* (f.), fine.
verhängen, to impose. *hinrichten*, to execute. *elend*, miserable.

Translate the following passage and parse all the verbs contained in them.

1. Unter Eduard dem Sechsten ward Niemand um seiner Religion willen hingerichtet, wiewohl man Strafen verhängte und selbst Princessin Maria am Ende ihren Beichtiger missen muszte. Gegen Elizabeth zeigte Eduard eine zärtliche (tender) Anhänglichkeit, gab aber dennoch seinen Willen dazu, dasz die Krone auch an ihr vorübergehe. (Dahlman's Gesch. der engl. Rev.)

2. Wenn du geglaubt, ich werde eine Rolle in deinem Spiele spielen, hast du dich in mir verrechnet.— Mein Weg musz gerade sein. Ich kann nicht wahr sein mit der Zunge, mit dem Herzen falsch. (Schiller's Wallenstein.)

3. Ein heftiger Sturm vermehrte das Feuer mit ungeheurer Schnelligkeit, die Flammen flogen von Strasze zu Strasze und in zehn Stunden war von einer der schönsten und reichsten Städte Deutschlands (Magdeburg) nichts mehr übrig, als die Domkirche, ein Kloster und eine Reihe elender Fischerhütten. (Nösselt's Geschichte.)

72.

Rule 72, Remark 69.

Seite (f.), side. *Wüste* (f.), desert. *Kerker* (m.), prison.
ziehen, to go. *preisen*, consider. *Spartaner*, Spartan.
Krieg (m.), war. *Blüte* (f.), bloom. *Absicht* (f.), mind.
Ding (n.), thing. *Regierung* (f.), reign. *antworten*, to answer.
Hauptsache (f.), principal thing. *im Bette liegen*, to keep one's bed.

1. I have been ill, and have kept my bed. 2. Every thing has two sides: the principal thing is that one may know and choose the best. 3. In the (*zur*) time of Augustus, Christ was born. 4. No man can consider himself happy before death. 5. A Spartan, who was lame, was asked how he could dare (*wagen*) to go to go to (the) war. I have, answered he, the mind to fight but not to flee. 6. I go to town twice every day. 7. The children sleep very gently (*sankt*), they will awake in a few hours. 8. The prisoner has escaped from prison; he will flee the country. 9. Fruit (*Das Obst*) has grown, ripened, and prospered well this year. 10. They have wandered about in the desert of Africa. 11. He has lived under the reign of Henry the Seventh, and died in the year 1496. 12. The flowers have blossomed, but their bloom has already disappeared.

73.

Rule 71, (c) of Remark 69.

Röhre (f.), tube. *Zaun* (m.), fence. *Fuchs* (m.), chesnut horse.
wund, sore. *ersparen*, to save. *umwerfen*, to throw over.
schnell, quick. *Mühe* (f.), trouble. *Stuhl* (m.), chair.
Miene (f.), mine. *umgehen*, † to avoid. *umgehen*, * to go round.

Explain the difference in the construction of neuter verbs in the following sentences:—

1. Ich habe mich mit meiner Reise geeilt—mein

Freund ist nach der Stadt geeilt. 2. Tilly hat Magdeburg ausgebrannt—das Feuer ist ausgebrannt. 3. Die Röhre hat geflossen—das Wasser ist aus der Röhre geflossen. 4. Ich habe den Fuchs und mein Vater den Schimmel geritten—der König ist nach Potsdam geritten. 5. Ich bin nach Hause gelaufen—er hat sich müde gelaufen. 6. Der Kutscher hat seinen Herrn gefahren—der Herr ist mit Vieren gefahren. 7. Der Fuhrmann hat uns umgeworfen—der Wagen ist auf dem Wege umgeworfen. 8. Wenn wir, sagte mein Freund, den Berg umgehen könnten, würden wir uns eine grosze Mühe ersparen—ich bin eine Meile umgegangen. 9. Der Kutscher hatte seinen Herrn so schnell gefahren, dasz dieser versicherte, der König selbst könne nie schneller gefahren sein. 10. Er ist auf dem Stuhle gesessen—und hat sich müde gessen. 11. Er ist über den Zaun gesprungen—der General hat the Miene springen lassen. 12. Er ist zwei Meilen gelaufen—und hat sich die Füszte wund gelaufen.

74.

Licht (n.), candle. *sich eilen*, † to hurry with. *Strom* (m.), stream. *schnell*, fast. *eilen*,* to make haste. *Unkraut* (n.), weed. *Ecke* (f.), corner. *Reise* (f.), journey. *Wagen* (m.), carriage. *schlecht*, badly. *sich müde laufen*, to be tired with running.

1. He has hurried with his exercises—and has made haste for (*in*, acc.) the garden. 2. John has driven his sisters to church—and has driven very fast. 3. Henry rode the grey horse—but he has ridden very badly. 4. He has avoided our house by (*nachdem er*) going round (*um*) the village. 5. We had sat so long that we were quite tired of sitting. (See sentence 10

of Exercise 73.) 6. The boys have run so fast and so much—that they are tired with running. 7. He swam an hour—and he has swam against the (*gegen*, acc.) stream. 8. The candles have burned out—the gardener has burned out the weed. 9. The wine has dropped from (*aus*, dat.) the cask—the cask had leaked (*fließen*). 10. He has gone a long journey—and has galled his feet with walking (*sich die Füße wund gehen*). 11. He stood at the corner—and has grown tired from standing (*sich müde stehen*). 12. He has upset the carriage—the table is upset.

75.

Rules 73, 74, 75, 76.

Gegenpartei (f.), opposition. *sich bilden*, to form.
sich ermunthigen, to take courage. *Widerstand* (m), resistance.
Unterhaus (n.), House of Commons. *Regierung* (f.), government.
ehrlich, honest. *meinen*, to mean. *bemerken*, to notice.

1. Seit lange bildete sich im Unterhause eine

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 15 (Remark 70, (a) (b) (c).

Wechsel (m.), change. *Natur* (f.), nature. *Sonnenschein* (m.), sunshine.
Sprache (f.), language. *Regen* (m.), rain. *ermattet*, exhausted.
Eifer (m.), zeal. *Schuld* (f.), debt. *Kattun* (m.), calico.
Glocke (f.), bell. *Gelegenheit* (f.), opportunity. *Kopf* (m.), head

1. We inhabit a very large and commodious (*geräumig*) house. 2. My cousins have travelled over the greatest part of Europe. 3. This old man (*Greis*) has lived to see many a change in this world. 4. Rain and sunshine animate by turns (*wechselweise*) exhausted nature. 5. This calico has been bleached in Lancashire. 6. The prevailing taste (*herschende Geschmack*) has very much corrupted our language. 7. He says his prayer—She asks for (*um*, acc.) a dress. 8. His zeal has abated (cooled)—I have taken a cold. 9. He has sat at (*bei*) table—He puts it into his head (acc.). 10. He pays his debts—She does not count her money. 11. He has jumped over (*über*, acc.) the fence—We have burst open the door. 12. These words sound well—They ring the bells.

Gegenpartei gegen die Regierung; allein sie ermutigte sich erst zum Widerstande, seit (since) man zu bemerken glaubte der König meine es nicht ehrlich mit der Sache der Reformation. (Dahlmann's Gesch. der eng. Rev.)

2. "Wenn ich denke mein Bette soll mich trösten, mein Lager soll mir's erleichtern; dann erschrecken mich Träume, und Grauen umgibt mich. Meine Seele und mein Gebein wünschen sich den Tod und ich begehre nicht mehr zu leben." (Job, C. VII. v. 13, 14, and 15.)

3. Nein, nein, Telemach erwiderte Calypso; es verlangt mich deine Abentheur zu wissen, beeile dich sie mir zu erzählen. (Fénélon's Télémaque.)

4. Ich will mich aufmachen und zu meinem Vater zurückkehren und zu ihm sagen: schrecklich habe ich mich an Dir versündigt, und bin es nicht mehr werth, mich deinen Son zu heissen. (Evangel. Lucas, C XV., v. 18, 19.)

76.

Remark 71.

Unglück (n.), misfortune. *schreiben*, to write.

Abendmahl (n.), passover.

Observe that with impersonal verbs used reflectively the *es* may be left out, thus we can say: *mich hungert*, *mich hat verlangt*, *mir kommt vor*, instead of *es hungert mich*, *es hat mich verlangt*, *es kommt mir vor*.

1. It occurs to me that I have paid (for) it. 2. I succeeded in establishing myself here (*mich festzusetzen*). 3. A misfortune happened to him. 4. She imagines to have seen her brother (seen to have). 5. It surprises me that you have not yet written to your

father. 6. I am pleased (it rejoices me) to hear (*zu vernehmen*) that you are well. 7. It vexes him not to have seen you. 8. I have longed with desire (*herzlich*) to eat (*halten*) this passover with you before (*ehe denn*) I suffer. 9. It concerns (*kümmern*) me little whether (*ob*) he comes or not. 10. It does not concern (*angehen*) him, how much money you spend (*ausgeben*) a day (*gen.*). 11. I am thirsty and hungry, give me something to (*zu*) eat and to (*zu*) drink. 12. I am sorry (that) you could not come sooner (*cher*).

77.

Remark 72, 73.

Sprachlehre (f.), grammar. *Reise*, (f.), journey. *Ende* (n.), end. *unternehmen*, to undertake. *Recht*, (n.), right, *hören*, to hear. *Gesundheit* (f.), health. *Gegenstand* (m.), circumstance. *sich irren*, to be mistaken.

1. We were astonished (pres.) to see him there. 2. They push and beat each other. 3. Men ought to love, honour, and esteem each other. 4. He has grown tired from sitting, and I have grown tired from standing. 5. We use Dr. de Weldycz' German Grammar. 6. I remember this circumstance, but I cannot recollect his name (*gen.*). 7. They are unwilling to undertake the journey, because their health is not very good. 8. Console thyself, my friend, everything must have an end. 9. We take the liberty of writing (to write) a letter to you. 10. You imagine that I appropriate (impute) these rights, you are mistaken. 11. You presumed that it had slipped my memory, you have been mistaken. It astonishes me to (*zu*) hear that you always excuse yourself when you have anything to do.

78.

Rules 77, 78, 79, Remarks 74, 75.

<i>roth</i> , red.	<i>entzückt</i> , delighted.	<i>anfechten</i> , to disturb.
<i>nun</i> , then.	<i>Strahl</i> (m.), ray.	<i>schweigen</i> , to be silent.
	<i>Schmerz</i> (m.), distress.	

Observe (a) that *es* is often placed at the beginning of the sentence to give it a particular emphasis; but in that case the verb does not agree with it but with the noun or pronoun following, which in reality is its nominative case.

(b) That the nominative *es* is placed after the verb, if the attribute is a personal pronoun with which the verb agrees.

1. Ich bin es; du warst es; sie wird es sein; wir werden es sein. 2. Sie sind es; Ihr seid es; ich bin es gewesen; du warst es gewesen.

3. Es wächst das Glück, dann wird es angefochten, man ist entzückt; nun kommt der Schmerz heran, und ehe man sich's versieht, ist's eben ein Roman. (before one is aware of it, it turns out a bubble.) 4. Es irrt der Mensch so lange er strebt. 5. Es möchte kein Hund so länger leben. 6. Es zucken rothe Strahlen mir um das Haupt (head). 7. Wart' nur! Es sollen Schläge regnen. 8. Es schweigt der Wind, es flieht der Stern. (Goethe's Faust.)

9. Es regnet, bald (soon) wird es donnern. 10. Es war einmal eine Königin, die hatte viele Kiender und war doch nicht glücklich. 11. Es sind zwanzig Jahre seitdem (since) ich die Stadt verlassen habe. 12. Was gibt's neues (in) Wien (Vienna)?

79.

1. Was it you? It was I, it was not I, it was my brother. 2. It seems that you are warm. 3. It will be suitable to go to town. 4. It has happened that.

there were three of them. 5. It has been very windy. 6. It will be fine weather, if it does not rain. 7. There was no money and no friends. 8. It is windy and dusty, it will soon rain. 9. It has snowed and frozen, but it will soon thaw. 10. It has lightened, it thunders now, and it will soon rain. 11. It is understood that you will come. 12. There are three boys and two girls who want (*wollen*) to speak with you (acc).

80.

Rule 80.

Bauer, peasant. *Rath* (m.), counsel. *Vermögen* (n.), fortune.
Posten (m.), office. *Scham* (m.), shame. *Versuchung* (f.), temptation.
Tasse (f.), cup. *sich empören*, to revolt. [tation].
Frage (f.), question. *sich entfernen*, to remove.

1. The pupil has obeyed the master (dat.). 2. He has removed from (*von*, dat.) the house. 3. The maid has broken (to pieces) two cups and three glasses. 4. He has deceived us. 5. He has resisted the temptation (dat.). 6. She has blushed at (*über*, acc.) this question. 7. Has he guessed it? 8. The people have (has) revolted against (*gegen*, acc.) their (his) king. 9. He has been dismissed from the office. 10. My friend has inherited a large fortune. 11. The son follows the counsel of his father. 12. The peasant has cultivated his fields.

81.

Rule 83.

Klavier (n.), piano. *Gesicht* (n.), face. *Thatsache* (f.), fact.

1. He has always underbid us. 2. He has thought erroneously. 3. The Count Iago has made a misalliance (misallied). 4. I have had doubts about it.

5. The peasants have made a bad harvest this year. 6. You made a mistake (taken wrongly) when you took that book. 7. He has misrepresented the facts. 8. The piano is tuned badly. 9. You misjudge my friend. 10. It is unbecoming (for) a young man to be idle. 11. Such a large bonnet disfigures (suits ill) a young face. 12. In making a false step, he has fallen, and broken his leg.

82.

Rule 84.

Irrthum (m.), error. *Kette* (f.), chain. *rathen*, to advise. *Menscheit* (f.), humanity. *abfallen*, fall off. *anklagen*, to accuse. *kurz und gut*, to be brief. *losmachen*, get loose. *losbinden*, to untie. *weglaufen*, to run away. *ablecken*, to lick. *anfassen*, to seize. *erfahren*, to experience. *gleichfalls*, at once. *anklopfen*, to knock. *auslachen*, to laugh at. *vortreten*, to come forward. *einbrechen*, to approach. *niederwerfen*, to throw down. *auftauchen*, to emerge.

1. Hast du mir weiter nichts zu sagen? Kommst du nur immer anzuklagen? Ist auf der Erde ewig dir nichts recht? 2. O glücklich! wer noch hoffen (hope) kann aus diesem Meer (Sea) des Irrthums aufzutauchen! 3. Ich rathe nun Dir, kurz und gut, dergleichen gleichfalls anzulegen, damit Du, losgebunden, frei, erfahrest, was das Leben sei. 4. Die Nacht bricht ein, Mephistopheles klopft an. 5. Valentin tritt vor, sie steht auf, Faust wirft sich nieder. 6. Margarete springt auf, die Ketten fallen ab. 7. Nun sagt, was wünschet ihr zu schmecken? Wie meint ihr das? Habt Ihr so mapcherlei? Ich stelle es einem jeden frei. 8. Geht! Ihr lacht mich aus. 9. Margarete macht sich los und läuft weg. 10. Aha,

du fängst schon an, die Lippen abzulecken. 11. Der Menschheit ganzer Jammer faszt mich an. 12. Diese Herren sehen stolz und unzufrieden aus. (Göthe's Faust.)

83.

Dank (m.), thank. *zumachen*, to shut. *Arm* (m.), arm.
losmachen, to get loose. *sich kleiden*, to dress. *hinsingehen*, go in.

1. I go out twice every day. 2. Send me back my books. 3. My friend William has departed this morning. 4. I offer you my best thanks. 5. He has fallen down and broken his arm. 6. Get up and dress yourself. 7. Open the window and shut the door. 8. Knock, and go in (*hinein*). 9. He has stepped forward and fallen down. 10. Get loose and run away. 11. He looks ill and unhappy. 12. He laughs at everybody.

84.

Rules 85, 86, 87.

Waffe (f.), arm. *geschickt*, cleverly. *Hülfe* (f.), help.
beinahe, almost. *Lehrjunge*, apprentice. *Grab* (n.), grave.

1. Die Grenadiere unseres Königes haben ihre Waffen sehr geschickt gehandhabt. 2. Dieser Richter hat seine Gewalt gemisbrauchet, indem er den Zeugen das Gesetz gemiszdeutet hat. 3. Dieser Schneider hat seine Lehrjungen gemiszhandelt. 4. Die ganze Stadt hat das Betragen des Bürgermeisters gemiszbilligt. 5. Haben Sie ihrem Freunde auf seinen Brief geantwortet? 6. Ich hätte es beinahe gemuthmaszt. 7. Dieser junge Officier hat nicht die Wohlthaten seines Onkels, des braven Generalen Stolzberg, anerkannt.

8. Christus is von dem Tode auferstanden, nachdem er drei volle Tage im Grabe gelegen ist. 9. Nun, sind Sie damit einverstanden? 10. Ich habe darüber nachbedacht, und will nichts mehr damit zu thun haben. 11. Ich werde dich aller Zeit mitvertheidigen wenn du je meiner Hülfe bedürftig sein solltest. 12. Alles ist zubereitet, nur Sie erwartet man.

85.

Kapitain, captain. *Rath* (m.), advice. *schuldig sein*, to owe. *Reise* (f.), travel. *beendigen*, to finish. *verwirklichen*, to realise. *Verantwortlichkeit* (f.), responsibility. *ausgeben*, to spend. *was den Betrag anbetrifft*, as to the amount. *voreilig*, hastily.

1. He has disdained my advice, he must now do it on his own responsibility. 2. He has walked for pleasure the whole night through. 3. You have judged too hastily of (*von*, dat.) this poor man, let us deliberate (counsel) what must (*soll*) be done. 4. This old man has prophesied a great many things, but nothing of it has as yet been realised. 5. I have worked off the money which I owed you. 6. I have chosen (to myself) this land for my future dwelling (*zukünftige Wohnung*). 7. The captain has kept back the money of the sailors until (*bis*) they have finished their voyage. 8. Why have you not answered (me) my letter? 9. Have you already breakfasted, gentlemen? Yes, madam, we have breakfasted, and walked for pleasure in the gardens. 10. Have you agreed with your friend as to the amount? 11. I would not have prophesied it, if I had not known it to be a fact (that it was a fact). 12. Could you guess how much he has spent during (*auf*, dat.) his travels in Italy?

86.

Thal (n.), valley. *Weib* (n.), woman. *Gespräch* (n.), speech.
wichtig, important. *Amt* (n.), office. *Besuch* (n.), visit.

1. Ich weisz nicht mit Ihm umzugehen,—ich kann diesen Berg umgehen. 2. Wir umfahren den Berg—Sie fuhren ein altes Weib um. 3. Die Diebe haben die Fenster durchgebrochen—das ist durchbrochene Arbeit. 4. Streiche dieses Wort durch—er durchstreicht das Land. 5. Er ist über das Thal gegangen—wir haben das Dorf übergangen. 6. Ihr Freund überläuft mich mit seinen Besuchen—das Wasser läuft über. 7. Er hat mich über das Dorf geführt—der Dieb ist des Diebstahls überführt worden. 8. Dieses Buch ist aus dem Französischen übersetzt worden—Er ist in einem Boote über den Flusz gesetzt worden. 9. Hohle mir dies Buch wieder—wiederhole mir dieses Gespräch. 10. Man hat ihm ein wichtiges Amt übertragen—der Bediente hat das Kind zu deiner Schwester übergetragen. 11. Das hätte ich mich nimmermehr unterstanden—Er steht unter dem Baume. 12. Ihr Schwager hat uns sehr gut unterhalten—er hält mich unter seiner Macht.

87.

Rule 89 (A), (B), (C), (D).*

lasten, to weigh. *quälen*, to torment. *Vergnügen*, (n.), pleasure.
göttlich, godly. *gehören*, to obey. *Müßiggang* (m.), idleness.
vergeben, to forgive. *Eigenschaft*, attribute. *vergessen*, to forget.

1. Sich beschäftigen heiszt ein Vergnügen finden können, der Müßiggang lastet und quält. 2. Nicht böse sein, heiszt noch (yet) nicht gut sein. 3. Vergeben und vergessen ist eine göttliche Eigenschaft. 4. Gehören ist des Menschen Pflicht. 5. Irren ist mensch-

lich, da GOTT ALLEIN nur vollkommen sein kann. 6. Er hatte es thun müssen. 7. Wir werden es ihn thun lassen. 8. Hilf mir arbeiten und ich werde dich lesen hören. 9. Geh spaziren und ich werde schlafen gehen. 10. Grossmüthig sagte er: er soll leben bleiben. 11. Man sagt: Lege dich schlafen; und auch: Er hat sich so eben schlafen gelegt. 12. Er ist ein merkwürdiger Mensch! Die einen macht er lachen die anderen weinen.

* The following additional exercises, from 16 to 23, are intended as a further illustration of Rule 89 (B). The examples quoted may be considered as the finest specimen of modern German, nearly all being taken from Göthe's "Faust." (See Remark 79.)

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 16.—*Mögen* means: MAY, TO BE PERMITTED, TO LIKE; and implies a chance, a possibility, a probability, an inclination, a wish or desire; as in—

1. Keiner *mag* die Werke des Schöpfers ergründen. 2. Ein jeder probirt was er *mag*. 3. Zwar weisz ich viel doch *möchte* ich Alles wissen. 4. Besuche mich nun wie du *magst*. 5. Wir *mögen* das nicht wieder hören. 6. Ich wünschte recht gern gelehrt zu werden, und *möchte* gern was auf der Erden und in dem Himmel ist, erfassen, die Wissenschaft und die Natur. 7. Ich *möchte* ihn auch todt in Wochenb'ä tchen lesen. 8. Ich musz gestehen den sauern *mag* ich nicht. Gebt mir ein Glas vom echten süszen. 9. Solch einen Gesellen *mag* ich nicht in der Nähe leiden. 10. Da *mag* denn Schmerz und Genuss, Gelingen und Verdruss, mit einander wechseln wie es kann; nur rastlos bethätigt sich der Mann.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 17.—*Wollen* means: TO BE WILLING, TO WANT, TO BE GOING TO, TO OFFER; implying a will, intention, inclination or desire; as in—

1. Was *wollt* Ihr da? 2. Wir *wollen* stark Getränke schlürfen. 3. Er *will* es mir nicht sagen und ich *will* es wissen. 4. Sie *wollten* eben aufstehen. 5. Allein, ich *will*, ich umsz es haben. 6. Wir *wollen* nach der Kirche wandern. 7. Ich *wollte* nach Frau Marthe fragen? 8. Was *will* den der auf unserm Ball? 9. Ich *wollte*, du hättest mehr zu thun, als mich am guten Tag (happy day) zu plagen. 10. Allein er *will* mir nicht begnügen. 11. Ich *will* es nicht thun. 12. Auch wir *wollten* es haben.

88.

nachtheilig, injurious. *Gesundheit* (f.), health. *Sache* (f.), thing. *angenehm*, pleasantly. *die Zeit verbringen*, to pass away the time.

1. Little eating and much drinking is injurious to the health (gen.) of men. 2. Is erring and forgiving human? 3. Governing is much more difficult than obeying. 4. One must be able to do a thing, and then one might do it. 5. He wanted to (would) write to him, but I could not let him do it. 6. He learns

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 18.—*Sollen* means: TO BE OBLIGED, TO BE ORDERED OR REQUESTED, TO BE (in the sense of TO DO); implying a moral necessity enforced by the will or command of another (it is not used to express a future action); as in—

1. Sie *sollen* zu Ihrem Vater kommen. 2. *Soll* ich mit dir das Zimmer theilen? 3. Und was *soll* ich dagegen Dir erfüllen? 4. Was *soll* ich meiden? *soll* ich gehorchen j-nem D ang? 5. So *soll* es einem jeden Faulenzer ergehen. 6. Es *sollte* stehen: Im Anfange war die Kraft. 7. Er *sollte* bei ihr speisen, aber er wollte nicht. 8. *Soll* ich mit Griffel, Meißel, Feder schreiben? 9. Ach! die Erscheinung war riesengroß, dasz ich mich recht als Zwerg empfinden *sollte*. 10. Ich *soll* schon sterben! wirklich, ich weiß nicht! *Soll* ich? 11. Was *soll* das? (*heissen*.) Was *soll* ich? (*thun*.) 12. Wozu *soll* dieser Unsinn? (*dienen*.)

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 19.—*Müssen* means MUST, and implies an obligation, a forced action; as in—

1. Du *mußt*! du *mußt*! und kostete es mein Leben! 2. Wir *müssen* es diesmal unterbrechen. 3. Freude *muß* Leid, Leid *muß* Freude haben. 4. Ihr *müßt* es so genau nicht nehmen. 5. Er hat es thun *müssen*. 6. Er hat bezahlen *müssen*. 7. Es ist so elend, betteln zu *mü-*sen, und noch dazu mit bösem Gewissen. 8. Ich *müßte* vor dem Herrn schamroth werden. 9. Wir *müssen* fort—die Zeit eilt. 10. Er *muß* wohl krank sein. 11. Sie *müssen* wissen—da-z ich es befohlen habe. 12. Sie kommen gewiß, sie *müßten* denn krank sein.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 20.—*Dürfen* means TO VENTURE; TO BE ALLOWED, TO NEED, TO HAVE OCCASION; it implies, like *mögen* (especially in the subjunctive mood), a probable contingency, and can often be translated by *may*, *might*, *need*, *should*, or *would*; as in—

1. Er *darf* keinen Wein triken. 2. *Darf* ich das thun? Nein, du

singing, and we dancing. 7. His father told him to go to sleep. 8. Help him to drive (for a walk). 9. I found him sleeping, although (*obgleich*) I told (*heissen*) him to remain watching. 10. Remain dwelling with us, we will help you to pass away your time pleasantly. 11. If you drive (for a walk), I will ride (for a walk). 12. He goes a begging, because he would not work.

darfst es nicht. 3. Wer *darf* das Kind beim rechten Namen nennen? 4. Hier bin ich Mensch, hier *darf* ich's sein. 5. Es ist spät, mein Herr, *darf* ich Sie begleiten? 6. Kann ich Dir was zu Gefallen thun? so *darfst* Du mir's nur sagen. 7. Thu's, wenn du *darfst*. 8. *Darf* ich fragen wo Sie herkommen? 9. Wenn ich so sagen *dürfte*; so müßte es geschehen. 10. Sie *dürfen* sich darüber nicht wundern. 11. Er *darf* sich nicht fürchten. 12. *Dürft* ich wohl diesmal mich entfernen?

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 21.—*Können* means CAN, MAY, KNOW; implies physical and moral possibility, a possible contingency, or is used elliptically where an infinitive (such as *do, read, write, speak, understand, &c.*), is understood; as in—

1. Ich *kann* lesen, schreiben und zeichnen. 2. Das ist ein allgemeiner Gebrauch, ein Jude und König *kann* es auch. 3. *Können* Sie Ihre Lection? 4. Nein, Herr Professor, ich *kann* sie nicht. 5. Der Mensch *kann* alles, was er will. 6. Diese Dame *kann* viele Sprachen. 7. Ich *kann* sie versichern, ich *kann* es nicht thun. 8. Er that alles was er *kann* aber er *kann* nicht viel. 9. Du hättest es thun *können*, wenn du es hättest thun wollen. 10. Was *kann* ich dafür? 11. Sie *können* sich irren da er kommen *kann*. 12. Wir *könnten* weit besser lesen als unsere Freunde, wenn wir so lange in die Schule gegangen wären als sie.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 22.—*Lassen* means: TO LET, TO LEAVE (alone), TO FORBEAR, NOT TO DO, TO PERMIT, TO ORDER, TO CAUSE, TO HAVE MADE, TO SUFFER TO BE DONE; and implies a command, entreaty, or permission. It is principally used to replace the imperative; as in—

1. *Lasz* mich gehen, ich will nichts mehr mit dir zu thun haben. 2. Er *läsz* uns, die Seinen, hier schmachkend zurück. 3. *Lasz* uns gehen, es ist spät. 4. Er *läßt* Sie freundlichst grüßen. 5. Wir werden euch in Frieden *lassen*. Ich habe mir ein Paar Stiefel machen *lassen*. 6. Dieser Herr *läßt* sich von jedermann berühen.

89.

verbieten, to forbid. *Ball* (m.), ball. *Vergnügen* (n.), pleasure.
deutlich, distinctly. *Feind*, enemy. *aufstehen*, to get up.
geschickt, clever. *leserlich*, neat. *vortheilhaft*, advantageous.
sich gewöhnen, to accustom oneself. *verfolgen*, to persecute.

1. He went to speak to him. 2. My mother has forbidden my sister (dat.) to go to the ball. 3. This house is to be sold, I have a mind to buy it. 4. I have had the pleasure to see your sister. 5. It is sad to have enemies who persecute us. 6. One must accustom oneself to speak distinctly and to write neatly. 7. It is time to get up. 8. These rules are very difficult to retain. 9. The desire (*das Verlangen*) to

7. Ich *ließ* ihn auf der Bank sitzen. 8. Wer hat das Fenster offen *gelassen*. 9. *Lassen* Sie das Kind herein. 10. Das Buch *läßt* sich lesen. 11. Gott *läßt* die Sonne scheinen. 12. Man hat uns mehr als eine halbe Stunde stehen *lassen*.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 23.

Observe that in German the infinitive may also be used:

(a) As a verbal noun, to denote the action implied in the verb, which is usually expressed in English by the present participle; as—*das Singen, das Arbeiten, das Beten, das Spielen*.

(b) As masculine nouns, by changing the final *n* into *r*, to denote the actor of the action represented by the infinitive; as—*der Helfer, der Kenner, der Schreiber, der Leser*.

1. Hier saß ich oft gedankenvoll allein und quälte mich mit *Beten* und *Fasten*. 2. Das *Fideln, Schreien, Kegelschieben* ist mir ein gar verhasster Klang. 3. Welches *Stürmen* und *Toben*! 4. Entschlafen sind nun wilde Triebe mit jedem ungestümmen *Thun*. 5. Ihr bestandet manche harte Proben; dem *Helfer* half der *Helfer* droben. 6. Er ist ein *Kenner* von Gemälden und Kupferstichen. 7. An die *Leser* dieser Blätter. 8. Ich bin der *Aussteller* und Sie der *Entnehmer* dieses Wechsels. 9. In den Säulen, auf den Bänken, vergeht mir *Hören, Sehen* und *Denken*. 10. *Girren* und *Brechen* der Äste, der Stämme mächtiges *Dröhnen*, der Wurzeln *Knarren*, und *Gähnen*. 11. Auf! oder Ihr seid verloren. 12. Unnütziges *Zagen! Zaudern* und *Plaudern*. (Goethe's *Faust*.)

appear clever often prevents a man from being so (to be it). 10. The most unhappy of men is he who thinks he is so (it to be). 11. If it is advantageous to make friends, it is still more so not to make enemies. 12. We have had the misfortune to lose our parents when (*als*) we were still young.

90.

Rules 91, 92.

Abschied (m.), leave. *sammeln* (f.), to gather. *nichts*, not a thing. *entgehen*, to escape. *gefällig*, obliging. *gütig*, kind. *Verfolgung* (f.), persecution.

1. To be happy, one must be contented. 2. I came to take leave of you. 3. He speaks of it without knowing it. 4. Instead of working he went to play. 5. One cannot know a thing without learning it. 6. He went to Germany in order to learn German. 7. We go to school to gather useful knowledge. 8. He did it without seeing it. 9. I will go to see him instead of writing to him. 10. To have friends one must be kind and obliging. 11. To escape the persecution he fled the country (*gen.*) 12. I cannot do it without seeing you.

91.

Rules 95, 96, 97.

Mühe (f.), pain. *fürchten*, to be afraid. *emporheben*, to lift up. *verhasst*, hated. *trennen*, to separate. *lächeln*, to smile. *wieder vorkommen*, to call again. *gewohnt sein*, to be accustomed.

1. Not being able to see him now (*nun*) I will call again in an hour or two. 2. Not being rich he has no friends. 3. The suffering prisoners have been liberated. 4. Your sister told me smiling that she had been to your house. 5. Being accustomed to

dwell together we had much pain to separate (ourselves). 6. Having no money, I cannot buy this house. 7. Trembling, said he to him, Farewell, my dearest friend. 8. Being still rich he went to Italy. 9. Being afraid to awake you. we spoke very (*ganz*) gently. 10. One makes oneself often hated by saying the truth. 11. Blushing with shame, he acknowledged his error. 12. The dying child lifted up its eyes towards (*gen.*) heaven.

92.*

Rule 98.

Verzweiflung (f.), despair. *aufbauen*, build up. *Gleiche* (m.), equal. *reiten*, on horseback. *Richter*, judge. *Vetter*, cousin. *zu Fusz* (n.), on foot. *belohnen*, to reward. *geräumig*, roomy. *Fleisz* (m.), industry. *Elend* (n.), misery. *schlagen*, to beat.

1. We have just (*ebenso*) read the received answer. 2. The built-up house of my cousin is very roomy and beautiful. 3. The rewarded industry of the peasant (*Landmann*). 4. I have sat there during three hours, and have read amusing books. 5. He came running, and she dancing. 6. Let us eat, drink, and play. 7. Betrayed by his friends, and persecuted by his enemies, he left the country. 8. Despised by his

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 24.

* Observe that the auxiliary verbs, *haben* and *sein*, are often omitted in past tenses; this ellipsis is very common in poetry and not unusual in prose, but it can only take place in relative or dependent sentences, that is, where the verb is placed at the end. Point out all the participles in the following sentences, explain, and translate them:—

1. Soll ich vielleicht in tausend Büchern lesen, dass überall die Menschen sich GEQUELT (*haben*), dass hier und da ein Glücklicher GEWESEN (*ist*). 2. Ist es das erste Mal in Eurem Leben, dass Ihr falsch Zeugnis ABGELEGT (*habt*)? 3. Ich meine ob Ihr niemals Lust BEKOMMEN (*habt*)? 4. Kein Dolch ist hier, von dem nicht Blut GFLOSSEN (*ist*), kein Kelch, aus dem sich nicht, in ganz gesunden

equals, persecuted by the laws, and punished by the judges, he finished his life in misery and despair. 9. They came on horseback and went away on foot. 10. The reigning sovereign of England is Queen Victoria. 11. Let us work and go out. 12. Beaten by the English and the French, the Russians were obliged to seek for peace.

93.

Rules 102, 103.

geschehen, to happen. *Abreise* (f.), departure. *zu Hause*, at home. *glauben*, to believe. *Spieltag* (m), holiday. *sich mischen*, to be *Angelegenheit* (f.), affair. *Versehen* (n.) mistake. [mixed up. *Belohnung* (f.), reward.

1. Perhaps I may do it, if it is not at all impossible. 2. He has much money and few friends. 3. He will probably come to-morrow, but he will leave (*abreisen*) without fail in three days. 4. Nowise will I be mixed up in this affair, as I have scarcely time for my own. 5. Have you enough mustard, or will you have a little more? 6. He has done nothing at all, and yet (*doch*) he wants (will have) a holiday. 7. Indeed, this is most likely a mistake. 8. Nothing, good or bad, has happened since (*seit*, dat.) your departure. 9. He is (*sich befinden*) very well and will probably come, but his wife is not at all well and will remain at home.

Leib, verzehrend hei-zes Gift ERGOSSEN (*hat*), kein Schmuck, der nicht ein lebenswürdig Weib VERFÜHRT (*hat*), kein Schwert, das nicht den Bund GEBROCHEN (*hat*), nicht etwa hinterrücks den Gegenmann DURCHSTOCHEN (*hat*). 5. Verzeiht! es ist ein so gross Erköthen, sich in den Geist der Zeiten zu versetzen, zu schauen wie vor uns ein weiser Mann GEDACHT (*hat*) und wie wir's dann so herrlich weit GEBRACHT (*haben*). 6. Christ ist erstanden! Selig der Liebende, der die betrübende, heilsame und übende Prüfung BESTANDEN (*hat*). (Goethe's Faust.)

10. That is undeniably true, and you will have (*müssen*) to pay it without fail. 11. You and not we shall receive the reward. 12. Mr. Holtz said yes, and his wife no; which shall I believe?

94.

Rules 104, 105.*

vorziehen, to prefer. *Spiel* (n.), play. *abreisen*, to set out.
aufbleiben, to sit up. *Brille* (f.); spectacles. *murmeln*, to grumble.
Behandlung (f.), treatment. *böse machen*, to make
Bücherbeutel (m.), a satchel. [angry.]

1. You must come some day (sometimes) to see (*besuchen*) him, otherwise he will be angry. 2. I study in the morning, and go for a walk in the evening. 3. Formerly I loved play, but now I prefer books. 4. I received yesterday a letter from my father, I answered it to-day, and to-morrow I shall set out for (*auf*, acc.) the country. 5. Where and how have you found this ring? 6. Where do these gentlemen come from, and why do they hurry so much? 7. When will he come, and how late shall we sit up for him? 8. Since (*seit*) when have you worn spectacles? 9. He grumbles continually and without ceasing, and yet he receives daily very good treatment. 10. I go sometimes into the country, but I go yearly to the seaside. 11. Why do you always lose your books? 12. I shall nevermore lose them if you buy me a satchel.

* Observe the difference between the adverbs *wann* and *dann*, and the conjunctions *wenn* and *denn*. *Wann* and *dann* indicate time; whereas *wenn* implies a condition, and *denn* a cause: as, *ich gehe hin dann und wann*; *wenn ich Geld hätte, &c. &c.*; *denn er glaubt*; *es sei denn das ich krank sei*.

95.

Rules 106, 107, Remark 83.

<i>Rock</i> (m.), coal.	<i>bitten</i> , to pray.	<i>begreifen</i> , to understand.
<i>enge</i> , tight.	<i>ansehen</i> , to look at.	<i>in's Elend gerathen</i> , to be
<i>da</i> , there.	<i>ankommen</i> , arrive.	[ruined.
	<i>verschwenderish</i> , extravagant.	

1. The more I look at him, the less I understand what makes him cry so. 2. Put (*legen Sie*) this somewhere, and that at the side of it. 3. I went right and left, in and out, here and there, and could not find him. 4. Come over (here) and I will go over (there). 5. Come down, for (*da*) I will not go up. 6. He is almost ruined, he is too extravagant. 7. Make this coat by much longer, but do not make it any tighter. 8. Is this village near or far (distant) from here? 9. The longer we are here, the later we shall arrive there. 10. Come down and Henry will go up. 11. Henry does not wish (*wollen*) to go up, and I will not come down.

96.

Rule 108, Remark 84.

<i>Ältern</i> , parents.	<i>bedauern</i> , regret.	<i>aufstehen</i> , to rise.
<i>Lerohe</i> (f.), lark.	<i>Adler</i> (m.), eagle.	<i>erhalten</i> , to get.
<i>gemein</i> , common.	<i>zur Zeit</i> , in time.	

1. You write well, your brother writes better, but your cousin writes the best. 2. I come here often, my brother comes oftener, but our father comes the oftenest. 3. John rises early, his brother William rises earlier, but their friends rise the earliest. 4. Whether (*ob*) I walk quick, quicker, or (in) the quickest (way), I can never be there in time. 5. Come earlier, and you can go later. 6. He writes well, but she reads

better than he. 7. We write oftener to our parents than to our friends. 8. Common birds fly high, the lark flies higher, and the eagle flies the highest. 9. Your brother can do it sooner than you, but your father can do it the soonest. 10. Come sooner, and you will regret it the least. 11. The less one wishes the more one gets. 12. Write to me the soonest (you can).

97.

Recapitulation of Rules 99 to 108.

leiden, to suffer. *Schicksal* (n.), fate. *Fortkommen* (n.), living. *Mehl* (n.), flour. *schütten*, to put. *Thüre* (f.), door.

1. Er ist wirklich krank und leidet unglaublich viel.
 2. Wahrscheinlich werden die Fremden heute noch ankommen.
 3. Das kann ich ihm nie vergeben.—Er ist unaufhörlich thätig spät und früh.—Oft arbeitet er bis in die Nacht.
 4. Wir haben uns seit drei Jahren nicht gesehen.
 5. Er schien mit seinem Schicksal sehr zufrieden zu sein, und meinte, dass er sich gar nicht besser wünschen könne.
 6. Überhaupt ist er ein sehr guter Mensch.
 7. Es ist überall gut, wo man sein Fortkommen findet, aber doch nirgends besser als hier.
 8. Der Mensch ist wie das Gras auf dem Felde.
 9. Was ist darin? die Frau hat ihr feines Mehl darein geschüttet.
 10. Er geht rechts und links, bald hieher, bald dorthin, und findet nichts.
 11. Ich werde mit ihm hinauf gehen und gleich wieder herunter kommen.
 12. Er warf ihn zur Thüre hinaus, und hat ihn seit der Zeit auch nicht wieder hereingelassen.

98.

Rule 112.

königlich, royal. *Aufenthalt* (m.), stay. *retten*, to serve.
Bach (m.), brook. *Anerbieten* (n.), offer. *begraben*, to bury.
Meierhof (m.), farm. *entsagen*, to renounce. *Schlachtfeld* (n.),
 [battlefield.]

1. Not far from the castle is (*sich befinden*) the village and the royal farms. 2. He has done it during his stay at the seaside. 3. By means of your assistance has this poor man been saved. 4. He has become captain by virtue of an order of the queen. 5. According to my letter of the 22nd of June, I have had the honour (*sich beehren*) to send my son to you. 6. Manchester is on this side, and Salford on the other side of the river Irwell. 7. Notwithstanding all his folly (*die Thorheit*) his father has forgiven him. 8. I come instead of my brother, and Henry comes instead of his cousin. 9. He dwells below the village and above the brook. 10. The fallen soldiers lie buried not far from the battlefield. 11. He has been able to do this by virtue of the law and by virtue of his authority. 12. He renounced his rights in favour of his brother.

99.

Rule 113 and (b) and (c) of Remark 86.

Gesetz (n.), law. *Prozess* (m.), lawsuit. *Pfarr Kirche*, parish
Kanzel (f.), pulpit. *erklären*, to declare. [church.
Küche (f.), kitchen. *Keller* (m.), cellar. *Kellermeister* (m.), butler.
es auf sich nehmen, to bear the blame.
Rheinwein (m.), Rhenish wine.

1. He lives opposite us, and his sister lives opposite the parish church. 2. Do not act contrary to this law, or else (*wo nicht*) you will (*müssen*) have to bear

the blame. 3. I have an aversion for Rhenish wine. 4. I am going to London to-day, and you must depart to-morrow for Glasgow. 5. According to all appearance you will lose your law suit. 6. According to to-day's newspaper, war has been declared. 7. He sat in the church next to the door, and we sat next to the pulpit. 8. We are coming from church, and they from school. 9. The servant comes from the kitchen, the gardener from the garden, and the butler from the cellar. 10. Besides me and my sisters, there was nobody in the garden. 11. Mr. Cobbett, together with his niece, have arrived from Paris. 12. He is not at home; he is, since three days, in the country.

100.

Rule 114.

gesund, sound. *Verstand*, reason. *mildthätig*, charitable.
gelangen, to arrive. *Hafen* (m) harbour. *erwarten*, to expect.
hindurchfahren, to pass through. *Mitternacht*, midnight.
nachsichtig, indulgent. *streng*, strict. *kreisen*, to revolve.
herumgehen to go round. *vertauschen*, to exchange.

1. They passed (through) the hostile vessels, and arrived safely in the harbour. 2. With this money I will buy books for myself and for my brother. 3. We have gone round the church in order to arrive sooner home. 4. He has exchanged his ring for a watch. 5. He is indulgent towards his neighbours and charitable towards the poor. 6. He who is not for me is against me. 7. We arrived in Manchester towards midnight, and our friends expected us about ten o'clock. 8. This is contrary to sound reason. 9. France will no longer wage (*führen*) war against England. 10. I will defend you against this and every

other man. 11. The earth revolves round the sun, and the moon round the earth. 12. Be indulgent to others and strict to thyself.

101.

Rule 115, Remark 88.

Rath (m.), council. *marschiren*, to march. *Themse* (f.), Thames. *Flusz* (m.), river. *Grafschaft* (f.), county. *schweben*, to hover. *Güte* (f.), kindness. *Trümmer* (pl.), remains. *Feld* (n.), plain. *Geist* (m.), spirit. *Edelsinn* (m.), generosity. *Scheitel* (m.), head. *enthalten*, to contain. *Weinberg* (m.), vineyard. *Infanterie* (f.), infantry. *Artillerie* (f.), artillery. *vorrücken*, to advance. [fantry. *Schiffbruch leiden*, to wreck.

1. According (gen.) to the order of the king and the council. 2. (Construe the sentence No. 1 with the dative.) 3. He rode along (gen.) the bank, and we went along (dat.) the road. 4. The infantry marched along the bank of the river (dat.), and the artillery advanced along the road (gen.) 5. It is my spirit which, unseen, hovers over thy head (*Pfeffel*). 6. Middlesex is a county (situated) over the Thames.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 25 (Remarks 85, 86, 87).

aushalten, to endure. *Anstellung* (f.), situation. *Musterungstag* (m.), field-Sinn (m.), mind. *Faulheit* (f.), idleness. *Gerste* (f.), barley. [day. *Achtung* (f.), respect. *Examen* (n.), examination. *Verpflichtung* (f.), obligation. *Russe*, Russian. *Vergnügen* (n.), pleasure. *Lehrer*, master. [tion.

1. I am here in my father's stead. 2. For God's sake open the windows, it is so hot here that I cannot endure it any longer. 3. He has done it for the sake of honour. 4. He went to the country on account of pleasure. 5. There is some barley between the wheat. 6. Sit down between me and Henry. 7. He could not go to-day, on account of money. 8. When one is out of sight, one is often out of mind. 9. I cannot bear this wine (is against me). 10. According to all appearance he will lose his situation. 11. The master has gone into the country with all his scholars. 12. He is gone to the seaside with his sister and her friend.

7. He has done this pursuant to the laws of the country where he resides (*bewohnen*). 8. We were walking along the sea coast, when all at once (*auf einma'*) we perceived the remains of a vessel which appeared to have been wrecked last night. 9. It was King Henry the Fourth whom the French people honoured and loved on account of his kindness, generosity, and courage. 10. The country over the Rhine contains great forests, extensive vineyards, and rich plains. 11. In consequence of your order, he went to London. 12. They walked along the bulwarks of Paris.

102.

Rule 116, Remark 89.

Kapelle (f.), chapel. *führen*, to bring. *stellen*, to place.
hinausragen, to overtop.

1. Switzerland is situated between three great countries : Germany, Italy, and France. 2. In the extreme of misfortune we allow ourselves to be deceived by the most feeble ray of hope. 3. Sit down on this chair, and put the knife on the table. 4. He sat at the window, and put his feet on the stool. 5. He has translated this work from French into

 ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 26 (Remarks 86, 87).

1. The soldiers had a (grand) field day (with bag and baggage). 2. He has gone thence (*von dannen*) with wife and child. 3. The master has punished John for his idleness. 4. You consider (*betrachten*) his kindness as (for) an obligation. 5. I feel the greatest respect and gratitude for the English nation. 6. Do you consider him a clever man? 7. I consider him not only not (for) a clever man, but (for) a great blockhead. 8. What sort of town is this? 9. What sort of people are the Russians? 10. I, for my part, will have nothing to do with it. 11. He was reading for examination, day by day and night by night. 12. He may speak again if he wishes it, but he must not contradict you.

German. 6. This tree overtops all the others. 7. He went to the castle, and preached before the king. 8. They have brought him before the judge. 9. There is a great difference between these two things. 10. He has been sitting between my two sisters. 11. I placed myself by the side of (*neben*) the count, and my wife stood by the side of the countess. 12. We dwell behind the church. He placed his chair behind the door.

103.

Rule 117.

gelangen, to reach. *Trug* (n.), falsehood. *Rohr* (n.), rush.

Wahn (m.), delusion. *Bediente*, servant. *Luft* (f.), air.

Wolkenzug (m.), drifting clouds. *Laub* (n.), leaf.

Nebelflor (m.), wreathing mist.

1. Wenn wir zum Guten dieser Welt gelangen, dann heisst das Bessere Trug und Wahn.

2. Doch willst Du, mit mir vereint, Deine Schritte durchs Leben nehmen, so will ich mich gern bequemen Dein zu sein, auf der Stelle.

3. Der Weg vom Himmel zur Hölle ist kurz, aber jener von der Hölle zum Himmel ist unendlich lang.

4. Sie sind vom Rheine, wie ich spüre.

5. Wolkenzug und Nebelflor erhellen sich von oben. Luft im Laube und Wind im Rohr, und Alles ist zerstoßen.

6. Ganz recht ! ich seh' es ebenfalls ; sie kann das Haupt auch unterm Arme tragen. (Göthe's "Faust.")

7. Warum sitzen sie immer beim Feuer ? 8. Was haben Sie am Auge ? am Fusze ? 9. Haben Sie den Bedienten zum Schuhmacher oder zum Schneider geschickt ? 10. Diese Dame trägt eine Feder am

Hute. 11. Er hat sein Buch aufs Fenster gelegt.
 12. Wir gehen diesen Abend ins Theater oder ins Concert.

104.

Recapitulation of Rules 109 to 117,
 and Remarks 85 to 89.

Oberaufseher, chief overseer. *Börse* (f.), exchange.
herstellen, to restore. *neiderschlagen*, to annul.

1. Ich habe an meinen Vater geschrieben, dasz mein Bruder Heinrich nach London gereist ist. 2. Er ging mit mir nach Hause und von da nach der Börse. 3. Man hat ihn zum Oberaufseher gemacht und ihn auf's beste empfohlen. 4. Sie saszen am Fenster und sahen in die weite See. 5. Er wohnt bei mir, und ist selten auszer dem Hause. 6. Meiner Geschäfte wegen, habe

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE 27 (Recapitulation of Prepositions).—
 Translate the following passages, and point out the prepositions, with their cases, contained in them :—

<i>schmachten</i> , to long.	<i>eilen</i> , to hurry.	<i>Entschluss</i> (m.), resolution
<i>schöpfen</i> , to draw water.	<i>ruhen</i> , to repose.	<i>Verleumder</i> , calumniator.
<i>scherzen</i> , to sport.	<i>heiter</i> , merrily.	<i>herumziehen</i> , to pull about
<i>anlachen</i> , to smile.	<i>hassen</i> , to hate.	<i>Spiel</i> (n.), game.
<i>erblassen</i> , to die.	<i>zur Seite stehen</i> , defend.	<i>wallen</i> , to pass.
<i>sich waffnen</i> , to arm.	<i>haften</i> , to attach.	<i>ganz allein</i> , solely.
<i>Thor</i> (m.), fool.	<i>wandeln</i> to travel.	<i>vergehen</i> , to transgress.
<i>weilen</i> , to tarry.	<i>Strauch</i> (m.), bush.	<i>froh</i> , joyful.
<i>erhöhen</i> , to uplift.	<i>Quelle</i> (f.), spring.	<i>Strahl</i> (m.), ray.
<i>Wahl</i> (f.), choice.	<i>hinschleichen</i> , to steal, to creep behind.	

1. *Nach dir schmacht' ich, zu dir eil' ich, du geliebte Quelle du!*
Aus dir schöpf ich, bei dir ruh' ich, seh' dem Spiel der Wellen zu.
Mit dir scherz' ich von dir lern'ich heiter durch das Leben wallen,
Angelacht von Frühlingsblumen und begrüzt von Nachtigallen.
 —Daphnis to the Spring.
2. *Durch dich ist die Welt mir schön, ohne dich würd' ich sie hassen,*
Für dich leb' ich ganz allein, um dich will ich gern erblassen;
Gegen dich soll kein Verleumder ungestraft sich je vergehen,
Wider dich, kein Feind sich waffnen, ich will dir zur Seite stehn.
 —Philomenis to his Friend.

ich ihn lange nicht besucht. 7. Durch alle Mittel war er nicht wieder herzustellen. 8. Ohne ihn wäre die Sache nicht zu Stande gekommen. 9. Während ihrer Abwesenheit ist einem Königlichen Befehle zufolge Ihr Prozeß niedergeschlagen. 10. Er ist mir höchst zuwider. 11. Unweit der Stadt ist ein angenehmes Landhaus. 12. Ich habe seit zehn Jahren keine Nachricht von ihm.

105.

Rule 118 (A) (B) (C) (D).

ehrlich, honest. *Verbrecher*, criminal. *Ruf* (m.), reputation. *Thorheit* (f.), folly. *Grund* (m.), reason. *hinrichten*, to execute.

1. Ehre nicht nur Vater und Mutter, sondern auch deine Lehrer. 2. Entweder er ist todt, oder es geht ihm sehr wohl. 3. Er ist zwar krank, aber doch nicht gefährlich. 4. Wenn ich nur ein Mittel wüsste diesen Schaden wieder gut zu machen. 5. Man hat ihn behandelt wie einen Verbrecher, und gethan, als ob es

3. *Da steh' ich nun, ich armer Thor,
Und bin so klug als zuvor;
Heisse Magister, heisse Doctor gar,
Und ziehe schon an die zehen Jahr,
Herauf, herab und quer und krumm,
Meine Schüler an der Nase herum.*

—Goethe's "Faust"

4. *Auf dich blicket, auf dir weilet oft mein Aug' in süßer Lust;
An dir haft' ich, an dich send' ich manch Gefühl aus froher Brust.
In dich setzet, in dir findet meine Fantasie viel Scenen,
Unter die sie gern sich träumet. Unter denen dort die schönen
Seelen, über diese Erd' erhöht, über ihre Gräber wandeln.
Vor mich tritt dann, vormir steht dann der Entschlußrecht gut zu handeln
Zwischen diesen Sträuchchen sitz' ich,—zwischen sie stiehlt sich dein Strahl.
Neben mich sinkt, neben mir ruht sie "die Freundin meiner Wahl";
Hinter mich still hingeschlichen—stand sie lachend hinter mir,
Und wir sprachen von den Sternen, unseren Lieben und von Dir*

—An Ode to the Moon.

nichts auf sich habe, einen ehrlichen Mann in schlechten Ruf zu bringen. 6. Wann werden Sie abreisen? Wenn das Wetter besser wird, in dieser Woche. Dann reise ich mit Ihnen, denn ich habe Zeit. (See observation to Exercise 94.) 7. Man glaubt nicht ohne Grund, dasz uns ein naher Krieg hervorstehe. 8. Eilen Sie, damit Sie nicht zu spät kommen. 9. Wir lieben ihn sehr, darum strafen wir seine Thorheiten. 10. Er irt krank, folglich musz er zu Hause bleiben. 11. Er ist arm, weil er nicht arbeiten will. 12. Ludwig der Sechzehnte ist wie ein gemeiner Mann vor Gericht gezogen und hingerichtet worden, aber er ist als ein standhafter Mann gestorben.

106.*

töden, to kill. *Arsnei* (f.), physic. *Reichthum* (m.), riches.
prüfen, to try. *erwerben*, to gain. *Glück* (n.), prosperity.
Ruhm (m.), glory. *versichern*, to assure. *Unglück* (n.), adversity.
verdienen, to gain. *unwissend*, ignorant. *hinschwinden*, to pass
bedürfen, to need. *Krankheit* (f.), illness. [away.
Unterhalt (m.), maintenance.

1. This man lives from day to day; that is to say (*das heiszt*), he gains every day only what he needs for (*zu*) his maintenance. 2. Prosperity gains friends, adversity tries them. 3. He speaks not only French but also German. 4. He can neither hear nor speak; he is deaf and dumb (*taubstumm*). 5. Man is fickle (*unsicher*) in his resolutions; sometimes (*bald*) he

* Observe the difference between *als* and *wie*: *ALS* implies *as, then*, and is used (1) in comparison, *as, er ist grösser als ich*; (2) in a kind of apposition, *as, er lebt als ein Privatmann in London*; (3) to mark time, *as, als ich zu ihm kam*. *WIE* means *as or like*, and serves to compare two things; *as, er handelt wie ein Rasender*.

wants one thing, sometimes another. 6. I assured him that I would always obey him ; this assurance, however, was not quite sincere (*aufrechtig*). 7. The wise man is happy ; but now, is Henry wise ? and therefore, is Henry happy ? 8. He is diligent, to be sure (*zwar*) ; and yet he could work more. 9. This paper is good, but too dear. 10. Both riches and glory pass away. 11. Gentlemen, either the illness, the physician, or even (*wol*) the physic, will kill him. 12. He is not only not learned, but also very ignorant.

107.

Rule 119. A and B.

Kopf (n.), head. *Bein* (n.), leg. *sachte*, gently.
Höhle (f.), grotto. *gerechter Himmel* ! goodness gracious !

1. Ach ! die Menschen, die Menschen, die werden den Kopf oben und die Füße unten haben ! 2. Eine Höhle ? Hm ! hat die Natur dort eine Höhle gebaut ? 3. Pfui ! Nein, so musz er nicht sagen. 4. Wenn das ist, weh' ihm ! 5. Pump ! lag er da, und brach das Bein. 6. Ei, fing der alte Witt an ; wäre ich denn wirklich so klug ?

1. Goodness gracious ! What do I hear ? 2. Well, what is the matter ? 3. O heavens ! he is dead. 4. Woe unto thee ! thou hast killed the child. 5. Ha, ha, gently, my friend ! 6. Fie, for shame, to use (*sagen*) such words.

SECTION III.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE.*(Continued from page 195.)*

28.

Remark 2 (a, 1, 2, 3, and 4).

<i>berühmt</i> , celebrated.	<i>Körper</i> (m.), body.	<i>himmlisch</i> , heavenly.
<i>edler</i> , precious.	<i>Leben</i> (n), life.	<i>Gelehrsamkeit</i> (f), learning.

1. He has counted the silver but not the gold. 2. Gold, silver, copper, and iron are metals. 3. The body of man is mortal, but his soul is immortal. 4. She is the mistress of the house. 5. The universities of Oxford and Cambridge are celebrated for (on account of) their learning. 6. The sun, moon, and stars are heavenly bodies. 7. Have you read Göthe and Schiller? 8. Human life is short. 9. Haynau will be for ever hated by the Hungarian nation. 10. I have read Byron, and my friend has read Shakspeare. 11. The pleasures of children do not suit (*passen*) the old (people). 12. Iron is more useful than silver and gold, but gold and silver are more precious metals than iron.

29.

Remark 2 (b, 1, 2, 3, and 4).

<i>Entdeckung</i> (f), discovery.	<i>meichelmörderisch</i> , treacherously.
<i>zerstören</i> , to destroy.	

1. Martin Luther, John Calvin, and John Knox were reformers; Isaac Newton and John Locke (were) philosophers; James Cook and Christopher Columbus (were) mariners and geographers; and T. W. Göthe, William Shakspeare, and J. P. Molière (were) poets. 2. The discoveries of Christopher Columbus. 3. Victoria, Queen of England. 4. London is a great city, and France is a beautiful country. 5. Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States of America, was treacherously murdered on the fourteenth day of April, 1865. 6. Gold and silver have I not, but what I have I give thee, my son. 7. Towns, villages, castles, palaces, houses, and even (*selbst*) huts have been destroyed by the enemy. 8. He eats bread and fruit, and drinks wine and water. 9. Have you bought any paper and ink? 10. My uncle has bought houses and gardens, but he has sold his horses and dogs. 11. Give me some mustard, salt, and pepper. 12. Father, mother, and children are dead.

30.

Remark 2 (c, 1 and 2).

<i>retten</i> , to save.	<i>Bösewicht</i> , criminal.	<i>verhaszt</i> , odious.
<i>scheuen</i> , to shun.	<i>Müller</i> , miller.	<i>Leben</i> (n.), life.
<i>Gustav</i> , Gustavus.		<i>wiedergeben</i> , to be again.

1. A Göthe, a Shakspeare, a Wellington, and a Napoleon are not born in every century. 2. I have bought a house, and my brother has bought a garden. 3. Your brother is a Hercules. 4. A child fell into the water, the miller drew it out, and saved its life. 5. A father gave his son an advice (*die Lehre*). The advice was: Do good, and shun no one. 6. I have seen a gentleman and a lady in the park. 7. Have you a servant? 8. The life of a criminal is odious. 9. Gustavus has caught a pretty bird. 10. Will you buy me a good book? 11. He has given me an apple and a pear. 12. When will there be again in England another Wellington?

31.

Rule 3 (A) (B), Remark 3.

<i>Haß</i> (m.), hatred.	<i>glücklich</i> , successful.	<i>Bifernacht</i> (f.), jealousy.
<i>Neid</i> (m.), envy.	<i>Broberer</i> , conquerer.	<i>Wohlthäter</i> , benefactor.
<i>plagen</i> , to afflict.	<i>Seefahrer</i> , navigator.	<i>bedürftig sein</i> , to be in want.
<i>Gemahl</i> , husband.	<i>Milde</i> (f.), mildness.	<i>großmüthig</i> , generous.
<i>Genuesich</i> , Genoese.	<i>geliebt</i> , beloved.	<i>weltberühmt</i> , world-known.

1. The bravery of the Duke of Wellington. 2. Hatred, jealousy, and envy, afflict the greatest part of men. 3. The greatness of Prince Albert the Good, the beloved husband of Queen Victoria. 4. Cæsar, the Roman Emperor, was a great general and a successful conqueror. 5. He, a poor traveller, is in want of assistance. 6. Scipio destroyed Carthage, the great, the world-renowned. 7. I speak of John Schulze, the rich merchant, and his brother, the successful soldier. 8. We lost in him not only our friend, the best, but also our benefactor, the most generous. 9. Christopher Columbus, the celebrated Genoese navigator, discovered America. 10. He remembered him, his old companion of war (*Kriegskamrad*). 11. We admire the beauty and mildness of the month of May. 12. Luther, the great reformer, was born in Eisleben.

32.

Rule 4 (A) (B) (C), Remark 4.

<i>Vetter</i> , cousin.	<i>Bierbrauer</i> , brewer.	<i>Gehorsam</i> (m.), obedience.
<i>schuldung sein</i> , to owe.	<i>vorbereiten</i> , to prepare.	<i>Zeitung</i> (f.), newspaper.

1. I have bought my brother's house and my cousin's garden. 2. The leaves of the trees are green. 3. We owe obedience to the ruler and the laws of the land. 4. By birth and education a Frenchman, A. Chamisso became, nevertheless, a German

poet. 5. By trade a brewer, Oliver Cromwell became the Protector of the English nation. 6. I have read the second and third volumes of this book. 7. He spends five hours every day in (with) reading newspapers. 8. A month is the twelfth part of a year, and a day is the thirtieth part of a month. 9. He has eaten a piece of dry bread, and drunk a glass of cold water. 10. The cook has prepared for you a nice (*gut*) dish of fish. 11. The merchant has sent us ten pounds of tea, a loaf of sugar, six quarts of wine, and three pounds of coffee. 12. God is the creator and ruler of the universe.

33.

<i>niedrig</i> , low.	<i>Lächeln</i> (n.), smile.	<i>erringen</i> , to win.
<i>dumpf</i> , sordid.	<i>Gewalt</i> (f.), power.	<i>Sinne</i> (pl.), senses.
<i>Band</i> (n.), fetter.	<i>Kusz</i> (m.), kiss.	<i>Schluss</i> (m.), end.
<i>Giebel</i> (n.), gable.	<i>Rede</i> (f.), speech.	<i>Gang</i> (m.), step.
<i>Eng</i> (f.), narrowness.	<i>ehrwürdig</i> , venerable.	<i>Gestalt</i> (f.), form.
<i>Handwerk</i> (n.), trade.	<i>Getümmel</i> (n.), bustle.	<i>Zauberflusz</i> (n.), witch-
<i>quetschen</i> , to stifle.	<i>möglich</i> , possible.	ing flow.
<i>Gewerb</i> (n.) factory.	<i>Krone</i> (f.), crown.	

Observe that for the sake of emphasis, the genitive case (expressing the English possessive case) is placed before the noun governing it, the article of that noun is sometimes dropped.

1. *Sie feiern die Auferstehung des Herrn* (Lord), *denn sie sind selber auferstanden*; *aus niedriger Häuser dumpfen Gemüchern*, *aus Handwerks-und Gewerbs-Banden*, *aus dem Druck von Giebeln und Dächern*, *aus der Strassen quetschender Enge*, *aus der Kirchen ehrwürdiger Nacht*—*sind sie Alle ans Licht gebracht*.

2. *I höre schon des Volkes Getümmel*, *hier ist des Volkes wahrer Himmel*.

3. *Was bin ich denn*, *wenn es nicht möglich ist der Menschheit Krone zu erringen*, *nach der sich alle Sinne dringen*?

4. *Erzählt mir sein Lebens Schluss*.

5. *Sein hoher* (lofty) *Gang*, *seine edle Gestalt*, *seines Mundes Lächeln*, *seiner Augen Gewalt*, *und seiner Rede Zauberflusz*, *sein Händedruck*, *und ach*, *sein Kusz*! (Goethe's "Faust.")

34.

Rule 5 (A) (B) (C) (D) and Rule 6.

<i>Stahl</i> (m.), steel.	<i>fein</i> , refined.	<i>Sitten</i> (pl.), manners.
<i>Treppe</i> (f.), staircase.	<i>Becher</i> (m.), cup.	<i>Kanone</i> (f.), canon.
<i>Grünze</i> (f.), frontier.	<i>bedürfen</i> , to be in want.	<i>Kraft</i> (f.), power.
<i>Marmor</i> (m.), marble.	<i>Acker</i> (m.), acre.	<i>Summe</i> (f.), sum.
<i>Dose</i> (f.), box.	<i>Stand</i> (m.), rank.	<i>Schwiegersonn</i> , son-in-law

1. I have a gold pen and you have a steel pen. 2. The staircase of the Queen's palace is of white marble. 3. A gold box and a silver cup. 4. He possesses a field of fifteen acres and a

wooden house. 5. John has a salary of £500. 6. I want (am in want of) a room of twenty feet in length. 7. The Prince of Prussia is the son-in-law of the Queen of England. 8. The frontiers of the South of France extend along the Pyrenees from St. Jean to Cape Creus. 9. He is a gentleman (*Mann*) of high rank and refined manners. 10. This is a ship of three thousand tons, sixty cannon, and five hundred horse power. 11. I have seen one of your friends, the best and the most faithful. 12. The tailor has made me a silk waistcoat, for which I have paid him the sum of thirty-five shillings.

35.

Rule 8 (A) (B) (C), Remark 5.

<i>worth</i> , worth.	<i>Umstand</i> (m.), circum-	<i>That</i> (f.), action.
<i>Mühe</i> (f.), while.	stance.	<i>Diebstahl</i> (m.), theft
<i>Ehre</i> (f.), honour.	<i>ehrlich</i> , honest.	<i>Hülfe</i> (f.), help.
<i>Hochverrath</i> (m.), high treason.	<i>Unredlichkeit</i> (f.), dishonesty.	

1. It is not worth while to say another word. 2. This officer is not worthy of such an honour. 3. I was expecting (looking for) this circumstance. 4. He is not acquainted with the way, and is in great need of money. 5. An honest man is not capable (fit) of such an action, because he is mindful of his duties. 6. Accused and convicted of high treason, he was expelled from the country. 7. The prisoner, guilty of theft, has been deprived of his privileges as a citizen (*das Bürgerrecht*). 8. Your sister is assiduous at her drawing, but she is still in need of her master's help. 9. I am mindful of the benefits of your brother. 10. Being suspected of dishonesty, he was deprived of his situation. 11. He has expired in my arms. 12. Are you certain of it? 13. He is unworthy of our love or even esteem.

36.

Rule 9, Remark 6.

<i>Lustfahrt</i> (f.), excursion.	<i>Gewohnheit</i> (f.), habit,
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

1. The son is resembling the father but not the mother. 2. This is suitable to his rank. 3. Do not make so much noise, Henry; it is not agreeable to thy grandfather. 4. He is obedient to his parents and his masters. 5. The weather is unfavourable for the excursion. 6. He is very good to others, but prejudicial to himself. 7. I am glad to see you; you are always welcome at my house. 8. Idleness is injurious to health. 9. White colour is hurtful to the eyes. 10. The dog is faithful to man, and man is often attached to the dog. 11. Be always grateful to thy benefactors. 12. Evil habits become hurtful to many people.

37.

Recapitulation of Rules 7, 8, and 9.

leichtsinnig, light-minded. *Schwätzer*, prattler. *Gesellschaft* (f.), company.
Bubenstück (n.), roguery. *Kraft* (m.), power. *Schwäche* (f.), weakness.

1. *Drei seiner Güter hat er an mich verpachtet.* 2. *Er ist des Lohnes würdig und der Hülfe bedürftig.* 3. *Sei deiner Pflichten eingedenk und deinen Ältern gehorsam, damit du nicht der Liebe guter Menschen unwürdig werdest.* 4. *Jedes Bubenstücks fähig, zeigte er sich auch seinem Wohlthäter ungetreu, der ihm doch so gewogen war.* 5. *Dem Leichtsinrigen ist die Strafe so heilsam, als dem Kranken die Arznei dienlich ist.* 6. *Er war des Weges nicht kundig und war ihm die Hitze beschwerlich.* 7. *Meinen Kräften angemessen werde ich mir alle Mühe geben, ungeachtet ich mir meiner Schwäche bewusst bin.* 8. *W. ist sechs Fusz groß und erst sechzehn Jahre alt.* 9. *Er sieht seinem Vater, dessen er in aller Hinsicht würdig ist, sehr ähnlich.* 10. *Est is uns sehr lieb, Sie bei uns zu sehen, Sie sind uns immer willkommen.* 11. *Ein Tag ist nicht immer dem anderen gleich.* 12. *Die Gesellschaft eines Schwätzers ist einem verständigen Manne lästig.*

38.

Rules 10, 11, 12.

Brett (n.), board.

Brunnen (m.), well.

Dukat (m.), ducat.

1. He may be about forty years of age. 2. This board is five inches thick. 3. This horse is not worth more than a ducat. 4. That well is more than three hundred feet deep. 5. The barracks of the horse artillery are situated (*liegt*) at the other end of the town. 6. This boy's father is a gold and silver watchmaker, and his uncle is a linen shirt maker. 7. He inhabits a pretty (*ganz*) large house, with a very (*recht*) pretty garden. 8. Our neighbour has very good (*artig*) children. 9. Do you mean his three sisters, or three of his sisters. 10. I mean that three of his sisters are very pretty girls, and the other two are not. 11. Mr. Robinson's rough silk factory is situated on the other side of the river Irwell. 12. I shall send to you three of my boys; will you give them a French lesson?

39.

Rules 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19.

Hofdame, lady at court.

einladen, to invite.

1. The poor young lady—she suffers a great deal, although the doctors say that she is out of danger. 2. I spoke to your sister of our neighbour's little girl. Has she seen her? 3. After the Queen had spoken for a long time with her lady at court, she asked her what was her name? 4. A friend wrote to him that he must sell his (own) horse. 5. A friend wrote

to him that he must sell his (the friend's) horse. 6. Miss W—— was there; she asked after your sister. Has she seen her and spoken to her? 7. I and thou are both happy; but she and her mother are unhappy. 8. Thou, thy brother, and I will go for a walk. 9. You, your brother and my sister have been invited to-day. 10. Masters and scholars have gone into the country. 11. Tell your mother that Miss Caroline Schröder is here; would she like to see her. 12. Poor girl, I pity her from my whole heart.

40.

Appendix to Rules 18 and 19 of Syntax.

A relative pronoun, used as a subject, requires the same person and number as the antecedent to which it refers.

1. *Ihr Beiden, die Ihr mir so oft in Noth und Trübsal beige-standen (habt), sagt was ihr wohl in deutschen Landen von unserer Unternehmung hofft?*

2. *Groszer herrlicher Geist, der du mir zu erscheinen würdigtest, der du mein Herz kennest und meine Seele, warum an den Schand-geßellen mich schmieden, der sich am Schaden weidet und an Verderben sich letzet?*

3. *Willkommen süßzer Dämmerchein! der du diesz Heiligthum durchwebst. Ergreif mein Herz, du süße Liebespein! die du vom Thau der Hoffnung schmachtend lebst. Wie athmet rings Gefühl der Stille, der Ordnung, der Zufriedenheit! In dieser Armuth welche Fülle! in diesem Kerker welche Seligkeit! (Göthe's Faust.)*

4. *Unser Vater, der du bist im Himmel, geheiliget werde dein Name; &c.*

41.

Rule 20 (A) (B) (C) (D), Remark 60 of Part I.

kämpfen, to fight.
ersteigen, to scale.

aufstehen, to arise.
Hüther (m.), guards.

denken, to imagine.
ermorden, to murder.

1. I am reading a book and thou art reading a newspaper.
2. I was writing a letter and he was reading Göthe's works.
3. I did go to London and he to Edinburgh. 4. Did you not know what I said and what I meant? 5. Did you not hear that I have no time? 6. Seized by terror the English took the initiative (*der Anfang machen*), and fought like lions and Herculeses. 7. All at once Charles XII. arose, ordered his troops to be placed in battle array, and began a slaughter. 8. To-morrow I shall go to Blackpool. 9. I will go to the concert to-night, and my sister to the ball, after which we shall go home together. 10. To-night we shall scale the castle, murder the guards, and free thee from this sorrow (Schiller's "Maria

Stuart"). 11. Imagine, Henry, I went yesterday over the bridge and met my friend, who told me that he was ill. 12. I am now reading, and he is just asleep.

42.

Rule 21.

<i>baden</i> , to bathe.	<i>erobern</i> , to conquer.	<i>widerstehen</i> , to resist.
<i>rufen</i> , to call.	<i>Freiwilliger</i> , volunteer.	<i>theilen</i> , to divide.
<i>vorübermarschiren</i> , to pass by.	<i>Umgegend</i> (f.), neighbourhood.	

1. I came yesterday to my friend when he was sleeping. 2. I wrote to you when I saw that you would not come. 3. Whilst we were reading he came in. 4. He sat in a chair when I entered the room. 5. What did you do when I wrote my letters? 6. The Russians conquered the poor Poles, who always resisted them heroically. 7. King Alfred divided England into forty counties. 8. I saw yesterday (the 12th of August, 1865), the volunteers of Manchester and the neighbourhood pass by my house. 9. We saw him this morning on the Exchange. 10. I saw this morning a friend of yours, have you also seen him? 11. As I was bathing Alfred came in. 12. Where were you when I was calling you?

43.

Rules 22, 23, 24, 25.

<i>Reise</i> (f.), journey.	<i>Nachrichten</i> , (pl.), news.	<i>Post</i> (f.), mail.
<i>ausruhen</i> , to repose.	<i>beunruhigen</i> , to alarm.	<i>Egypten</i> (n.), Egypt.

1. Henry has just come from his journey. 2. I have bought two horses and a carriage. 3. He has written a letter to his father, and also to his uncle. 4. There has happened something extraordinary at the Assize Court of Manchester; a man has murdered a woman, a witness against him. 5. The mail has arrived from Liverpool; have you heard the news? 6. After I had finished my work I went for a walk. 7. After the troops had reposed for about two hours they were alarmed by the enemy. 8. I shall go, but he will remain. 9. They will write to us from London, and we will write to them from Egypt. 10. I shall depart (*reisen*) to Italy as soon as I have received a letter from my friend Frederick, who is now at Venice. 11. As soon as I shall have seen your brother I will write to you.

44.

Rule 26.

Musik (f.), music.

1. I would dance if there were any music. 2. Would you have seen him if you knew where he was. 3. My brothers would not have done it, if their father had not allowed them to

do it. 4. If I had good paper, good ink, and a good pen, I would write every day to my friends. 5. No doubt he would have seen her if she had given him my letter. 6. Would you inhabit this country if you knew it as well as I do. 7. I would go if I knew that I could arrive there at nine o'clock. 8. Why would he not have played? 9. If I were rich I would be charitable. 10. If we had money we would buy this horse. 11. If I had seen him I would have spoken to him. 12. Why would you not have bought this very (*ganz*) fine house.

45.

Rule 95, and (B) of Rule 98 in Part I.

<i>thätig</i> , actively.	<i>vergehen</i> , to pass.	<i>Schmerz</i> (m.), sorrow
<i>Wonne</i> (f.), bliss.	<i>Taumel</i> (m.), ecstasy.	<i>verschliessen</i> , to shut up.
<i>verheissen</i> , to promise.	<i>Verdruß</i> (m.), vexation.	<i>Busen</i> (m.), bosom.
<i>beweisen</i> , to manifest.	<i>heilen</i> , to cure.	<i>häufen</i> , to keep up.
<i>predigen</i> , to preach.	<i>zetheilen</i> , to parcel out.	<i>erweitern</i> , to enlarge.
<i>umbringen</i> , to kill.	<i>schmerzlich</i> , painful.	<i>Genuss</i> (m.), enjoyment,
<i>Wissensdrang</i> (m.), thirst of knowledge.		<i>zerscheitern</i> , to be wrecked.

Observe that poets, although using the present and past participles as adjectives, express an immensity of action in it. Mark the following passages:

1. *Thätig ihn Preisenden, Liebe Beweisenden, brüderlich Speisenden, predigend Reisenden, Wonne Verheissenden, euch ist der Meister nah', euch ist er da!*

2. *Du bringst mich um. Lass das Vergangene vergangen sein.*

3. *Du hörst ja, von Freude ist nicht die Rede. Dem Taumel weih' ich mich, dem schmerzlichsten Genuss, verliebttem Hasz, erquickendem Verdruß. Mein Busen, der von Wissensdrang getheilt ist, soll keinem Schmerzen künftig sich verschliessen, und was der ganzen Menschheit zugetheilt ist, will ich in meinem innern Selbst genießen, mit meinem Geist das Höchste und das Tiefste greifen, ihr Wohl und Weh auf meinen Busen häufen, und so mein eigen Selbst zu ihrem Selbst erweitern, und, wie sie selbst am End' auch ich zerscheitern.* (Goethe's Faust.)

46.

Rule 27 to 29.

<i>Wahrheit</i> (f), truth.	<i>schweigen</i> , to be silent.	<i>gottesfürchtig</i> , godly.
<i>fort</i> , away	<i>anzünden</i> , to light.	<i>Achtung</i> (f), esteem.
<i>fromm</i> , pious.	<i>Meinung</i> (f), opinion.	<i>rein</i> , pure
	<i>Erfindung</i> (f), invention.	

1. I believe that Jesus Christ is the way, the truth, and the life; and that without him none come to the Father. 2. Be silent, until you are called. 3. He rejects my opinion, although he knows that I am right. 4. Let him do his exercise, and you may learn your lesson. 5. We will away; we must go (away). 6. Just (*nur*) let me alone (*gehen*). 7. Come in gentlemen;

take seats and light your cigars. 8. Be proud and you will meet (*finden*) with little esteem. 9. Well, let us drink, play, and depart (by the past participle). 10. In yonder cottage dwell very pious and godly people. 11. When we are in the country we have usually much pleasure. 12. I know that your friend has not said it at all, and that it is a pure invention. 13. Thank God, my brother has at last returned from his long journey.

47.

Rule 28.

Stelle (f.), place. *Regierung* (f.), government. *ankommen*, arrive.
Kaiser, emperor. *zweifeln*, to doubt. *es sei denn dass*, unless.

1. I have heard that you have received the place for which you have applied to the English government. 2. Oh! if he would come, how happy would be his wife and children. 3. I doubt whether you will get a letter to day. 4. Oh yes, said he, if I had money I would also have friends. 5. He told me he could not come. 6. He speaks so low (*leise*) that nobody can (may) understand him. 7. I asked him yesterday whether he could pay me the money, to which he replied, I cannot pay it you now, unless I can get some. 8. I wish I might do it. 9. If I had time I would go out for a walk. 10. Many people would be more benevolent if they were richer. 11. This gentleman assured me he has not yet told you everything. 12. They say (rumour) that the Emperor of France is dead.

48.

Rule 33 (A) (B) (C).

verstorbene, late. *Fürstliche Gemahl*, Prince Consort. *zeigen*, to show.

1. These are our brothers and those their friends. 2. Henry IV., Emperor of Germany, was a very unhappy monarch. 3. One of my servants has become a soldier and the other a sailor. 4. This seems to be a very good book. 5. He is called a miser by all his neighbours. 6. This boy's name is (called) Henry, and that girl's Henrietta. 7. John, thou wilt always remain an idler, if thou dost not follow the advice of thy father. 8. Our gardener's child has been christened William. 9. Our servant's name is Elizabeth, but she is called (*nennen*) Mary, because one of my sisters is named Elizabeth. 10. The late Prince Consort of Queen Victoria is called by the English people the great and the good. 11. We are all mortal men. 12. This general has shown himself a brave man, and defended his country like a hero.

49.

Rule 34 (A) (B) (C) (D) (E), Remark 10.

<i>Achlen</i> , to fetch.	<i>Dasein</i> (n), existence.	<i>früh</i> , early.
<i>zu Mittag essen</i> , to dine.	<i>rein</i> , pure.	<i>Meinung</i> , (f) opinion.

1. The prisoner was accused of theft, and has been convicted of it. 2. You are accused of idleness, my son; you must get up earlier and work a little in the morning. 3. We work during the day, go out for a walk in (during) the evening, and sleep during the night. 4. I dine every Sunday and Thursday with my uncle and cousin. 5. Go straight to Robert, and fetch him as he is. 6. I have honoured this man with my friendship, and have taught him something better. 7. They have robbed me of my money, and dismissed me from the service. 8. We live and die with the hope of a better future. 9. Blessed are the pure in heart: for they shall see God. 10. I am of opinion that it will soon rain. 11. I long after the concert. 12. He will not do it to my knowledge.

50.

Rule 35 (A) (B) (C) (D), Remarks 11, 12.

<i>scherzen</i> , to joke.	<i>Rath</i> (m.), advice	<i>dergleichen</i> , such a thing
<i>wählen</i> , to choose.	<i>Handlung</i> (f.), action.	<i>entgehen</i> , to escape.
<i>Gefahr</i> (f), danger.	<i>Glück</i> (n.), joy.	<i>Unternehmen</i> (n.), enterprise.

1. Nobody has ordered this boy such work. 2. You are pleased to joke; no such thing has happened. 3. Buy me a hat and him a coat. 4. I wish you joy in (*zu*) your enterprise. 5. This bonnet becomes you, my sister; thank me for having chosen it for you. 6. I am ill; permit me to remain at home. 7. What do you advise me to do? it seems to me that they will not believe it. 8. This book belongs to me, and not to my brother. Do you like it? (Does it please you?) 9. You imagine that he is running after you; forgive me, Emily, you are mistaken. 10. Follow the advice of your father, and he will always dissuade you from evil actions. 11. I ascribe my happiness to that circumstance. 12. We have escaped a great danger by following his advice.

51.

Rule 31 (A) (B) (C) (D) (E).

<i>passen</i> , to fit.	<i>verlassen</i> , to leave.
-------------------------	------------------------------

1. I read a book, and my brother writes a letter. 2. Rosa loves her father and mother; she is a very good child. 3. This gentleman always rides a grey horse and his brother a chesnut. 4. The coachman has driven us very badly; he has overthrown us twice. 5. He is astonished not to find you at your work.

6. They write daily to each other, and yet they are vexed at not hearing oftener from one another. 7. Frederick has inquired after you; he will be astonished to hear (*zu vernehmen*) that you have left England. 8. He is sorry not to have remembered it; you must forgive (it) him, he will endeavour to be more attentive in future. 9. Are you not ashamed to lay in bed so long, Edward? Really you ought to master at last your idle habits, and decide to be more industrious. 10. I am hungry and thirsty; give me something to eat and to drink. 11. They call him the naughty Henry; but he assures me he never does a wicked action. 12. Many men dishonour themselves by not seizing fit opportunities for doing good to their fellow creatures.

52.

Rules 37 and 38, Remark 14.

<i>dankbar</i> , grateful.	<i>Verschwender</i> , spendthrift.	<i>Stirne</i> (f.), forehead.
<i>Wespe</i> (f.), wasp.	<i>Angesicht</i> (n.), face.	<i>Kugel</i> (f.), ball.

1. The soldiers sacrifice their lives for the country. 2. The grateful son writes every week a nice letter to his good father. 3. I call him my friend, and you call him your enemy; yet, I can assure you, you are mistaken. 4. They call him a fool and a spendthrift. 5. The master has called (*schelten*) him an idler because he would not do his exercises. 6. The wasp stung my (me in the) finger. 7. He wounded my (me in the) arm. 8. The physician feels the pulse of the sick (the sick on the pulse). 9. He kissed his sister on the forehead. 10. He knocked my head because I trod on his foot. 11. He kissed her hand and looked sharp into her face. 12. A ball struck his (him in the) arm.

53.

Rules 40, and 41, Remark 15.

<i>denken</i> , to propose.	<i>streben</i> , to strive.	<i>blau</i> , blue.
<i>lenken</i> , to dispose.	<i>gehörchen</i> , to obey.	<i>beschützen</i> , to protect.

Translate the following sentences and explain grammatically their construction:—

1. Man proposes, God disposes. 2. He writes, and we read. 3. Blue is not red, and black is not white. 4. To command is much more difficult than to obey. 5. The boy is writing his exercises. 6. Men are striving after happiness. 7. He has become a merchant. 8. God is Almighty and All-knowing. 9. This boy is industrious. 10. Mother and daughters have gone to the concert. 11. He plays and works at the same time. 12. The father loves and protects his children.

54.

Rules 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47.

Translate the following examples, find out and explain according to the above rules all the sentences they contain, viz.: their form (Rule 44), and whether they are: (a) simple or compound; (b) principal or accessory; (c) antecedent or conclusive.

1. *Fische und Vögel sind Thiere.* 2. *Die Fische schwimmen und die Vögel fliegen.* 3. *Thiere leben, wachsen und bewegen sich.* 4. *Alle Thiere sind nützlich, aber eins ist doch nützlicher als das andere.* 5. *Die Thiere, welche dem Menschen vorzüglich nützlich sind, vermehren sich gewöhnlich auch sehr stark.* 6. *Wenn es keine zahmen Thiere gäbe, würden wir viele Bequemlichkeiten des Lebens entbehren.* 7. *Ich weisz nicht, dasz ich es werde thun können.* 8. *Folge dem Arzte, wenn du krank bist.* 9. *Gehören die Fledermäuse auch zu den Thieren?* 10. *Nachdem Coriolan von Tullus befragt wurde, wer er sei? antwortete er: Durch den Hasz des Volkes und die Kleinmüthigkeit der Patricier bin ich aus Rom vertrieben. Ich suche Rache. Willst du mein Schwert wider deine und meine Feinde gebrauchen? Hier ist es.—Willst du meine Dienste nicht—so steht mein Leben in deinen Händen. Tödtet immer einen alten Feind, der sonst nur wiederkommen und größeres Unheil in deinem Vaterlande anrichten könnte.*

55.

1. *Ein Hund, der, wenn er geneckt wurde, sehr böse war, bisz einen Knaben, der ihm beim Ohr zupfte, in die Hand.* 2. *Wie glücklich ist der Mann, der von keiner Reue gequält wird.* 3. *Traget das Gold ins Capitolium zurück, rief Camillus zu den Römern und entfernt euch, ihr Gallier mit euren Wagschaalen und Gewichten! Rom musz nicht durch Gold, sondern durch Eisen losgekauft werden.* 4. *Ich verdanke mein Leben und alles Gute was ich genieße meinen Aeltern.* 5. *Möchten doch alle Jünglinge ihre Jugendjahre gewissenhaft benutzen!* 6. *Der Vater, welcher eine Reise nach dem Brocken machte, hat seine beiden Söhne, weil sie ein gutes Zeugniß erhalten haben, mitgenommen.* 7. *Der Frühling, dessen milde Wärme uns so wohlthut, belebt Erde und Luft mit Thieren allerlei Art, von denen jedes auf seine eigene Weise seines Lebens sich freut.* 8. *Sobald ich meinen Freund werde gesehen haben, will ich Ihnen alles mittheilen.* 9. *Niemand wird leugnen, dasz die Uebelthäter hier auf Erden nicht immer bestraft werden.* 10. *Um seinen Vater eine halbe Stunde zu sehen, ist der Sohn zehn Meilen weit gegangen.*

56.

Rules 48, 49, 50.

Parse logically the sentences in the following examples, and explain their contraction or abbreviation:—

1. *Er hat Stein und Bein geschworen.* 2. *Er ist über alle Berge.* 3. *Du wirst sehen, dass er ihn breit schlagen wird.* 4. *Wenn er dir das Geld nicht zurückgibt will ich mit ihm Deutsch reden.* 5. *Viel Geschrei, wenig Wolle.* 6. *Schwarz auf weiss.* 7. *Volksstimme, Gottesstimme.* 8. *Ein religiöser Mensch ist ein wohlthätiges Beispiel für Andere; geschätzt und geachtet von jedem Freunde der Tugend, lebt er ein glückliches und vorwurfs-freies Leben.* 9. *Der Mann, stolz auf seinen Reichthum, wollte es nicht zugeben.* 10. *Der Brief, geschrieben an meinen Freund, ist auf der Post verloren gegangen.* 11. *Gegen Arme wohlthätig, gegen seine Untergebene freundlich, zeigt er sich immer als Menschenfreund.*

12. *Gewohnt, den Gesetzgeber in Deutschland zu spielen, und selbst über das Schicksal des Kaisers zu gebieten, sah der stolze Churfürst von Baiern sich durch Wallenstein's Erscheinung auf einmal entbehrlich gemacht.* (Schiller's Thirty Years' War.)

57.

Rules 51, 52 (A) (B) (C) (D), 53 (A) (B) (C) (D) (E).

mächtig, powerful.	geliebt, beloved	Waarenlager (n), warehouse.
theuer, dear.	bringen, to reduce.	anvertrauen, to confide.

Alter the natural order of the fifth and the following sentences in the different ways indicated in Rule 51:—

1. The father gave his son a book. 2. Has the father given his son a book? 3. That the father may give his son a book. 4. If the father had a book he would give it to his son. 5. I also was rich and powerful but am now reduced to misery. 6. In this town one finds great warehouses and rich merchants. 7. This beloved country, shall I see it again? 8. To you I confide my wife and child, my dearest and most beloved. 9. Yesterday I saw my friend, but to-day I can no longer see him, as he has departed for America. 10. I speak now to him who sits by the window. 11. He has sent one of his servants to town. 12. I have now read the third volume of Schiller's Thirty Year's War.

58.

Rules 54, 55, 56.

Translate the following examples, and point out the different ways of inversion:—

1. *Auf der Weisheit, nicht des Vergnügens Pfaden, wandelte Hercules von der Erde zum Olympe.* 2. *In die grösste Betrübniß*

hat uns Alle die Nachricht von Deiner Krankheit gesetzt. 3. Einen schwatzhaften Knaben redete Zeno so an: Zwei Ohren gab uns die Natur und nur einen Mund, damit wir mehr hören als sprechen. 4. Unser Aller Verhängniss schrieb auf eherne Tafeln der Hoherhabene und schwieg. 5. Schön ist, Mutter Natur, deiner Erfindung Pracht auf die Fluren verstreut. 6. Lindernde Thränen, als Gefährtinnen gab Euch dem menschlichen Elend weise die gütige Natur! Könnten ihr Leiden die Menschen nicht weinen, wie ertrügen sie's wohl?

7. "Ich führe dich und was ich thun kann, höre! Hab' ich alle Macht im Himmel und auf Erden? Des Thürners Sinne will ich umnebeln, bemächtige dich der Schlüssel und führe sie heraus mit Menschenhand. Ich wache! die Zauberpfunde sind bereit, ich entführe euch. Das vermag ich. Auf und davon!"

—Göthe's Faust.

8. Ihn treibt die Gährung in die Ferne
Er ist sich seiner Tollheit halb bewusst;
Vom Himmel fordert er die schönsten Sterne,
Und von der Erde jede höchste Lust,
Und all Nähe, und alle Ferne
Befriedigt nicht die tiefbewegte Brust.

—Göthe's Faust

GENERAL EXERCISES.

To be translated into English. Point out and explain the grammatical and logical construction of the various authors.

59.

1. Was klagt ihr? Warum weint ihr? Freuen solltet ihr euch mit mir, dass meiner Leiden Ziel nun endlich naht, dass meine Bande fallen, mein Kerker aufgeht, und die frohe Seele sich auf Engelsflügeln schwingt zur ew'gen Freiheit. — Da — als ich in die Macht der stolzen Feindin gegeben war, — da war es Zeit, um mich zu weinen! (Schiller's Maria Stuart.)

2. Die Liebe flieht davon je mehr man sie verfolgt; sie folgt den, der sie flieht, und flieht den, der ihr folgt. (Shakspeare.)

3. Der Mensch scheint mit nichts vertrauter zu sein, als mit seinen Hoffnungen und Wünschen, die er lange im Herzen nährt und bewahrt, und doch, wenn sie ihm nun begegnen, wenn sie sich ihm gleichsam aufdringen, erkennt er sie nicht und weicht von ihnen zurück. (Göthe.)

4. Es gibt eine Mittelstrasse in Allem; der gesunde Menschenverstand findet sie leicht, die Leidenschaft nie. (Zschocke.)

60.

1. Die Hinrichtung war für den 30sten Januar zu *Wheithalle*, in *Cromwells* und des Königs Wohnung, veranstaltet, so dass sie zwischen zehn Uhr Morgens und fünf Uhr Nachmittags geschehe. Man hatte am Ende des grossen Tafelsaales eine Oeffnung in die Mauer gebrochen, wodurch der Weg geradehin auf die offene Strasse und auf das schwarz bekleidete Schafot führte. Man sah auf diesem, zwei verummte Männer in Matrosentracht neben dem Richtbeile stehen. Karl gab selbst das Zeichen zu dem Streiche, der sein Haupt vom Rumpfe trennte. Als der Streich fiel, hörte man aus der dichten Menge einen misztönigen dumpfen Seufzer; aber der Scharfrichter faszte den Kopf, zeigte ihn dem Volke, und sprach: "Dieses ist der Kopf eines Verräthers." Zwei Regimenter zerstreuten dann langsam die wogende Menge. (*Dahlmann's Gesch. der eng. Rev.*)

2. Fragen ist leichter als Antworten, wie Fordern oft leichter ist als Geben, Rufen leichter als Kommen. (*Hebel.*)

61.

1. Erhabener Geist! du gabst mir,—gabst mir Alles,—worum ich bat.—Du hast mir nicht umsonst dein Angesicht im Feuer zugewendet.—Gabst mir die herrliche Natur zum Königreich, Kraft, sie zu fühlen, zu genieszen.—Nicht kalt staunenden Besuch erlaubst du nur, vergönne mir in ihre tiefe Brust wie in den Busen eines Freundes zu schauen. (*Göthe's Faust.*)

2. Es gibt Gemüther, die von Natur so gutartig sind, dass selbst böses Beispiel und verworfener Umgang sie unverderbt lassen.

(*Cooper.*)

3. In Gott zu leben, alle Freuden und alle Leiden, alles Handeln und Genieszen auf Gott zu beziehen, nichts Höheres zu wünschen, als seine Liebe, nichts inniger und ausschliessender zu lieben als Ihn, das ist des Menschen höchste Bestimmung. (*T. Glatz.*)

4. Dinge, welche noch zweifelhaft sind, thun niemals gut; sie machen oft mehr Unruhe als wenn man sie gewisz weiss; denn was gewisz ist, das steht entweder nicht mehr zu ändern, oder, wenn man es zeitig genug weiss, kann man ihm noch abhelfen.

(*Shakspeare.*)

62.

1. Was für ein seltsam Ding ist eine grosse Gesellschaft! Eine ungeheure Masse Menschen, die einander im höchsten Grade gleichgültig sind; die zusammenkommen, um sich zu belustigen, während bei weitem die grösste Mehrzahl von ihnen die entsetzlichste Langeweile spürt. Wie geistlos, wie ganz eigentlich uncivilisirt ist eine solche Scene, sind solche Schauspiele! (*Bulwer.*)

2. Schön ist der Frieden! Ein lieblicher Knabe—liegt er gelagert am ruhigen Bach, und die hüpfenden Lämmer grasen lustig um

ihn auf dem sonnigen Rasen; süßes Tönen entlockt er der Flöte, und das Echo des Berges wird wach, oder im Schimmer der Abendröthe wiegt ihn in Schlummer der murrende Bach. (Schiller's Braut von Messina.)

3. Das Schicksal der Menschen steht unter sich in fürchterlich schönem Gleichgewicht. Die Wagschaale dieses Lebens sinkend, wird hochsteigen in jenem, steigend in diesem, wird in jenem, zu Boden fallen. Aber was hier zeitliches Leiden war, wird dort ewiger Triumph; was hier endlicher Triumph war, wird dort ewige unendliche Verzweiflung. (Schiller's Die Räuber.)

63.

1. Nachdem Napoleon mit ungeheurer Kriegesmacht auch in die Einöden und Wälder des fernen Ruszlands eingedrungen war, und er das große Reich zu seinen Füßen liegen sah, geschah es, dass Gott der Herr sein Antlitz von ihm wandte. Der Frost weniger Winternächte (1812) vertilgte in den verschneiten Wildnissen die Heereskraft des Niebezwingenen. Da erhoben sich, als er mit Schrecken zurückfloh, die Könige und Völker des Welttheils weit umher und schwuren den Untergang ihres vieljährigen Drängers. Er aber sammelte eifertig neue Schlachthaufen in grosser Zahl zu Fuß und Rosz, und zog abermals gegen die Könige des Welttheils aus, über den Rhein in das Innere Deutschlands. Da stießen sie in den Feldern bei Leipzig auf ihn und schlugen ihn in dreitägiger Schlacht mit dem Schwerte ihrer Rache (16, 17, 19 Oktober, 1813). Er floh über den Rhein, sie aber folgten ihm auf den Fersen nach. (Zschöcke's Schweizerlands Geschichte.)

64.

1. Der Witz ist am Ende eine sehr scharfe, beizende Zuthat und für manche Magen viel zu sauer; treuherzige gute Laune hingegen ist das Oehl und der Wein einer fröhlichen Gesellschaft, und es gibt keinen angenehmeren Verein, der dem gleicht, wo ein mäsiger Spaz gemacht und viel gelacht wird. (Irving.)

2. Und woher weisst du, dass ich den Feind nicht wirklich zum Besten habe?—dass ich nicht euch alle zum Besten habe? Kennst du mich so gut? Ich wusste nicht, dass ich mein Innerstes dir aufgethan (habe)?—Der Kaiser, est ist wahr, hat übel mich behandelt!—Wenn ich wollte, ich könnt' ihm recht viel Böses dafür thun.—Es macht mir Freude, meine Macht zu kennen; ob ich sie wirklich brauchen werde, davon, denk' ich, weisst du nicht mehr zu sagen, als ein anderer. (Schiller's Wallenstein.)

3. Wie selten ist der Mensch mit dem Zustande zufrieden in dem er sich befindet! Er wünscht sich immer den seines Nächsten, aus welchem sich dieser gleichfalls herausieht. (Göthe.)

65.

1. *Stunden gibt es, deren Schwere Lebensjahre überwiegt,
Weil in ihrer Freudenleere eine Welt von Schmerzen liegt.*

(Herder.)

2. *Was scheltet ihr mich? Was ist mein Verbrechen? Ich habe eine gute That gethan, ich habe das Reich von einem furchtbaren Feinde befreit und mache Anspruch auf Belohnung. DER einz'ge Unterschied ist zwischen EUREM und MEINEM Thun: ihr habt den Pfeil geschärft, ich hab' ihn abgedrückt. Ihr sätet Blut und steht bestürzt, dasz Blut ist aufgegangen. Ich wusste immer was ich that, und so erschreckt und überrascht mich kein Erfolg. Habt ihr sonst einen Auftrag mir zu geben? denn stehenden Fuszes reis' ich nach Wien, mein blutend Schwert vor meines Kaisers Thron zu legen und den Beifall mir zu hohlen, den der geschwinde, pünktliche Gehorsam von dem gerechten Richter fordern darf.*

(Schiller's Wallenstein.)

3. *Die Strafe macht dich frei von dem Gefühl der Schuld,
Drum straft dich, Kind, nicht Zorn des Vaters, sondern Huld.*

(Rückert.)

4. *Miszhöre mich nicht, du holdes Angesicht! Wer darf ihn nennen?—Und wer bekennen: ich glaub' ihn?—Wer empfinden und sich unterwinden zu sagen: ich glaub' ihn nicht? Der Allumfasser, der Allhalter, faszt und erhält er nicht Dich, mich, sich selbst?—Wölbt sich der Himmel nicht dadoben?—Liegt die Erde nicht hierunten fest?—Und steigen freundlich blickend ewige Sterne nicht herauf?—Schau' ich nicht Aug' in Auge Dir, und drängt nicht Alles nach Haupt und Herzen Dir, und webt in ewigem Geheimnisz unsichtbar sichtbar neben Dir?—Erfüll' davon Dein Herz, so grosz es ist, und wenn Du ganz in dem Gefühle selig bist, nenne es dann wie Du willst, nenn's Glück! Herz! Liebe! Gott!!—Ich habe keinen Namen dafür! Gefühl ist Alles; Name is Schall und Rauch umnebelnd Himmelsgluth.*

(Göthe's Faust.)

END OF EXERCISES.

GERMAN—ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

Abentheuer, n., adventure
abermals, anew, once more
Abwesenheit, f., absence
achten, to esteem
allgemein, general
Ami, n., charge, office
angenehm, agreeable
Angezicht, n., face
Anhänglichkeit, f., attachment
Anfang, m., beginning
Aprikose, f., apricot
Anlitz, n., countenance
Arbeit, f., work, labour
Armuth, f., poverty
Arznei, f., physic, medicine
Ast, m., branch
athmen, to breathe
auch, also
aufdringen, to obtrude on
aufstehen, to rise
Aufgabe, f., exercise
aufgehen, to rise, (come up, open)
aufstehen, to get up
aufthun, to open
ausschlieszen, to exclude
Aussteller, m., drawer

B.

Bach, m., brook
Band, n., tie } See Rem. 17, p. 14.
Bank, f., form }
Bediente, m., servant
beeilen, to hurry
Befehl, m., command, order
befragen, to ask
begegnen, to meet
begehren, to desire (covet)
begleiten, to accompany
behandeln, to treat
Beichtiger, m., confessor
beinahe, almost
Beispiel, n., example
beistehen, to assist
beissend, sharp, smart
beklagen, to complain
bekleiden, to cover (clothes)

belohnen, to reward
belustigen, to divert
bemächtigen, to seize (get hold of)
benutzen, to make use of [self
bequemen (sich) to accommodate one-
Bequemlichkeit, f., convenience
bereit, ready
bestehen, to consist
Besten (zum), to make sport of
Bestimmung, f., destination
bestraft, punished
Besuch, m., visit
besuchen, to visit
beten, to pray
bethätigen (sich), to set at work
Betragen, n., conduct
betrüben, to afflict
Betrübnisz, f. and n., affliction
Bett or *Bette*, n., bed
Beutel, m., purse
bewegen, to induce
bewundern, to admire
bewusst, conscious
Bibliothek, f., library
Biegung, f., bent, curve
Bildniz, n., likeness
Birne f., pear
Bitte, f., prayer
Blatt, n., leaf
blicken, to look (glance)
Blume, f., flower
Blut, n., blood
bluten, to bleed
Boden, m., ground
Boot, n., boat
bösartig, ill-natured
brauchen, to need (want)
Brille, f., spectacles
Brocken, m., a high mountain in
Brust, f., breast [Germany
Bürgermeister, m., mayor
Busen, m., bosom

C.

Churfürst, m., elector
Christoph, Christopher
Colomb, Columbus

D.

Dammerschein, m., faint light
denken, to think
Dieb, m., thief
Diebstahl, m., theft
dicht, tight, dense
Diener, m., servant
Dienst, m., service
Ding, m., thing
Dolch, m., dagger
Dorn, m., thorn
Drang, m., throng
Dränger, m., oppressor
dröhnen, to roar (groan)
Druck, m., pressure
durchweben, to interweave
dumpf, damp

E.

ebenfalls, also, too
Echo, n., echo
echt, pure, genuine
ehrer, sooner
ehren, to honour
erhaben, sublime
eigentlich, exact, true
eifertig, hasty, speedy
eindringen, to break in
Einöde, f., desert, wilderness
Elefant, m., elephant
Elend, n., misery
Ende, n., end
enden, to finish
endlich, finite, limited
Endung, f., termination, end
Engelsflügel, m., angel's wing
entbehren, to be in want of (miss)
entbehrlich, superfluous
entehren, to dishonour
entfernen, to remove
entführen, to carry off
entlocken, to allure (lead away)
Entnehmer, m., the acceptor
entschlafen, to expire (fall asleep)
Entschluss, m., resolution
entsetzlich, horrible
entzücken, to delight
Erde, f., the earth
erfassen, to lay hold on
Erfindung, f., invention
erfüllen, to fulfil
Erfüllung, f., fulfilment
ergötzen, to delight
ergreifen, to seize
erkennen, to clear up
erinnern, to remember
Erscheinung, f., appearance
ertragen, to bear
erwidern, to reply
ewig, eternal

F.

falsch, false
Farbe, f., colour
fassen, to seize
fasten, to fast
Faulenzer, m., idler
Feder, f., pen, feather
Fehler, m., fault, mistake
feiern, to celebrate
Feind, m., enemy
Feld, n., field
fern, distant
Ferne, f., distance
Ferse, f., heel
Feuer, n., fire
Fichte, f., pin
fideln, to fiddle
Finger, m., finger
Fisch, m., fish
Flamme, f., flame
Fledermaus, f., bat
Flöte, f., flute
Flug, m., flight
Flügel, m., wing
Flur, f., field
Fluss, m., river
folgen, to follow
fordern, to demand
Freiheit, f., liberty
freuen, to rejoice
freundlich, friendly
Freundschaft, f., friendship
Frieden, m., peace
froh, glad
fröhlich, joyful
Frost, m., frost
Frühling, m., spring
führen, to lead
Fülle, f., fullness
fürchten, to fear
fürchterlich, frightful

G.

Gähnen, n., oscillation
Gährung, f., fermenting
Gebein, n., limbs
Gebirge, n., mountain chain
Gebrauch, m., use
gefährlich, dangerous
Gefährte, m., companion
Gefallen, n., liking
Gefangene, m., prisoner
Gefühl, n., sentiment
Gegend, f., region
Gegnermann, m., opponent
gehorschen, to obey
geistlos, spiritless
gekommen, come
gelehrt, learned
geliehen, lent

geliebt, beloved
Gelingen, n., success
gelingen, to succeed
Gemach, n., room, chamber
Gemälde, n., picture
gemein, common
Gemüth, n., mind, disposition
General, m., general
Genusz, m., enjoyment
gerade, straight
gern, willingly
Gesellschaft, f., company
Geschrei, n., screaming, noise
Gesell, m., companion
Gesetz, n., law
Gesetzgeber, m., lawgiver
Gesundheit, f., health
gestehen, to acknowledge
gesund, healthy
gethan, done
Getränk, n., beverage
Gewalt, f., power
Gewicht, n., weight
Gewissen, n., conscience
gewissenhaft, conscientiously
gewogen, kind, affectionate
gibt (es), there is
girren, to ooo
gleichgültig, indifferent
Gleichgewicht, n., equilibrium
gleichen, to equal (resemble)
gleichsam, as it were, as if
Glück, n. happiness, luck
Gott, m., God
Gottesstimme, f., God's voice
Grab, n., grave, ditch
Grad, m., degree
Gras, n., grass
grauen, to dawn (have a horror)
Grenadier, m., grenadier
grozmüthig, generous
Grund, m., ground, reason
Gut, n., estate
gutartig, good-natured

H.

Händedruck, m., shake of hand
handeln, to act
Hass, m., hatred
Haupt, n., head [army
Heerskraft, f., the power of the
Heiligthum, n., sanctuary
heilsam, salutary
heiss, hot
Held, m., hero
Helfer, m., helper
Hemd, n., shirt
herrlich, glorious
hervorstechen, to be conspicuous
herzlich, hearty

Herzogthum, n., dukedom
Heuchelei, f., hypocrisy
hilft, helps
Hinrichtung, f., execution
Hinsicht, f., view, consideration
hinterrücks, from behind
Hitze, f., heat
hocherhaben, sublime
hochsteigen, to mount high
hoffen, to hope
Hoffnung, f., hope
Hülfe, f., help
hüpfen, to jump (leap)
Hut, m., hat, bonnet

I AND J.

immer, always
Jammer, m., wretchedness
Januar, m., January
Jude, m., Jew
Jugend, f., youth
Jugendjahr, n., youth
Jupiter, m., Jupiter

K.

Kaiser, m., emperor
Kegelschieben, n., playing at nine-
Kehle, f., throat [pins
Kelch, m., cup, chalice
Kenner, m., connoisseur
Kerker, m., dungeon
klagen, to complain
Klang, m., sound, tune
Kleinmüthigkeit, f., faintheartedness
Kloster, n., cloister
klug, wise
knarren, to creak (rattle)
kommen, to come
Königreich, n., kingdom
Korn, n., rye
kosten, to cost
Kraft, f., power
Kragen, m., collar
Krankheit, f., illness
Krieg, m., war
Kriegesmacht, f., the forces of war
krumm, crooked
Kuchen, m., cake
Kupferstich, m., engraving
Kuss, m., kiss

L.

Lager, n., camp
lagern, to be encamped
Lamm, n., lamb
Landhaus, n., country house
Langeweile, f., tediousness
lassen, to let
Last, f., burden
lästig, burdensome

Laune, *f.*, humour
Leben, *n.*, life
leben, to live
Lection, *f.*, lesson
Lehrer, *m.*, teacher
leichtsinig, fickle, frivolous
Leid, *n.*, sorrow, pain
Leiden, *n.*, suffering
leiden, to suffer
Leser, *m.*, reader
letzen, to gratify
Liebe, *f.*, love
Liebespin, *f.*, torment of love
lindern, to alleviate
Lippe, *f.*, lip
Lohn, *m.*, reward
loskaufen, to release (ransom)
Löwin, *f.*, lioness
Luft, *f.*, air
Lust, *f.*, mind, joy
lustig, merry, jovial

M.

Macht, *f.*, power, might
Magen, *m.*, stomach, nature
Maidlume, *f.*, lily of the valley
Magister, *m.*, master
Mal or *Mahl*, *n.*, time
Masse, *f.*, crowd
mäßig, moderate
Matrosentracht, *f.*, sailor's dress
Mauer, *f.*, wall
Meer, *n.*, sea
mehr, more
Mehrzahl, *f.*, majority
meiden, to avoid
Meißel, *m.*, chisel
Menge, *f.*, multitude
merkwürdig, remarkable, curious
Menschenfreund, *m.*, philanthropist
Menschheit, *f.*, humanity
Menschenhand, *f.*, human hand
mild, mild
misstönig, discordant
Mittel, *n.*, means
mittheilen, to communicate
Montag, *m.*, Monday
Mühe, *f.*, trouble
Mond, *m.*, month
murmeln, to murmur

N.

Nachmittag, *m.*, afternoon
Nachricht, *f.*, news
Nacht, *f.*, night
Nagel, *m.*, nail
nah, near
Nähe, *f.*, nearness, proximity
nahen, to approach
Näherin, *f.*, seamstress

Natur, *f.*, nature
necken, to tease (provoke)
Niebezwingener, *m.*, never con-
 noch, yet [quered]
Noth, *f.*, need

O.

Officier, *m.*, officer
Öffnung, *f.*, opening
oft, often
Öhl, *n.*, oil
ohne, without
Ostwind, east wind

P.

Paradies, *n.*, paradise
Patricier, *m.*, patrician
Pfad, *m.*, path
plagen, to plague
plaudern, to chatter
Pracht, *f.*, pomp, state
preisgeben, to abandon (expose)
Probe, *f.*, trial
probiren, to try
Prozess, *m.*, lawsuit
Prüfung, *f.*, examination

Q.

quälen, to torment
quer, cross, across

R.

Rache, *f.*, vengeance
Rasen, *m.*, turf, sod
rastlos, restless
Rath, *m.*, counsel
Reformation, *f.*, reformation
Reich, *n.*, realm, reign
Reise, *f.*, journey, travel
religiös, religious
retten, to save
Reue, *f.*, repentance
Richtbeil, *n.*, executioner's axe
Ring, *m.*, ring
Rolle, *f.*, roll, part
Rose, *f.*, rose
Ros, *n.*, horse
rufen, to call
ruhig, quiet
Rumpf, *m.*, trunk, body

S.

Saal, *m.*, saloon
Sache, *f.*, thing
sammeln, to gather
sauer, sour
schaden, to hurt
Schafot, *m.*, scaffold
schamroth, blushing with shame

Schandgeselle, m., companion of
scharf, sharp [shame]
Scharfrichter, m., executioner
schätzen, to estimate
Schauspiel, n., comedy
Scheusal, n., monster
Schicksal, n., fate
Schimmer, m., glimmer
Schlag, m., strike
Schlachtfeld, n., battlefield
Schlachthaus, n., heaps of battle
schlecht, bad
Schlummer, m., alumber
schlürfen, to sip (imbibe)
Schlüssel, m., key
schmachten, to languish
Schmerz, m., pain
schmieden, to forge (attach)
Schmuck, m., ornament
Schneider, m., tailor
Schöpfer, m., creator
Schrecken, m., fear
schrecklich, frightful
schreien, to scream
Schrift, f., writing
Schritt, m., step
Schuld, f., debt, fault
Schüler, m., scholar
Schwäche, f., weakness
schwatzhaft, loquacious
schweigen, to be silent
Schwert, n. sword
Schwester, f., sister
See, f., sea, m., lake
Seele, f., soul
Seide, f., silk
Seite, f., side
Seligkeit, f., salvation, bliss
seltsam, strange, odd
Seufzer, m., sigh
sieht, sees
sinken, to sink
Sinn, m., sense, feeling
Sohn, m., son
Soldat, m., soldier
sonnig, sunny
Sonntag, m., Sunday
Spasz, m., jest
spät, late
speisen, to dine
Sprache, f., language
Spiel, n., play
spielen, to play
Sprichwort, n., proverb
spüren, to perceive (trace)
Stamm, m., stock, stem
Stand, m., stand
standhaft, constant
staunen, to be amazed
steigen, to step up

Strafe, f., punishment
streuen, to strew (scatter)
Stiefel, m., boot
Stille, f., stillness
Stimme, f., voice
Stock, m., stick
Stolz, m., pride
stolz, proud
Strahl, m., ray
Strasse, f., street
streben, to strive
Streich, m., stroke
Sturm, m., storm
Stürmen, n., storming

T.

Tafel, f., dining table
Tafelsaal, m., dining saloon
Tag, m., day
Tanne, f., fir tree
Thäter, m., doer
Thau, m., dew
Theater, n., theatre
Theil, m., part
theuer, dear
Thräne, f., tear
Thun, n., doing
Thürner, m., turnkey
tief, deep
tiefbewegt, deeply moved
Titel, m., title
toben, to roar
Tod, m., death
töden, to kill
Tollheit, f., madness
Ton, m., sound, tune
Traum, m., dream
treuherzig, true hearted
Triumph, m., triumph
trübe, cloudy, muddy
Trübsal, f. and n., affliction
Tugend, f., virtue

U.

Übel, n., evil
Übelthäter, m., evil doer
üben, to practice
übergeben, to give over
Umarmung, f., embrace
Umgang, m., intercourse
umgeben, to surround
umsonst, in vain
unartig, naughty, ill-behaved
uncivilisirt, uncivilised
unendlich, endless
Unheil, n., mischief
Ungeheuer, n., monster
ungeheuer, huge, immense
ungemein, uncommon

ungestimmt, untuned
ungestüm, vehement
unglaublich, incredible
unnützig, vain
Unsinn, m., nonsense
unterbrechen, to interrupt
Untergang, m., destruction
Unternehmung, n., undertaking
unverderbt, incorrupted
Ursache, f., cause

V.

Vaterland, n., fatherland
veranstalten, to bring about
verdanken, to thank for
verderben, to spoil
Verdrusz, m., vexation
Verein, m., union
vereinen, to unite
vergeben, to give away (forgive)
Vergnügen, n., pleasure
vergnügen (sich), to amuse oneself
vergönnen, not to grudge (permit)
verhaszt, hated
verloren, lost
vermehren, to multiply (increase)
vermehrt, multiplied
Vermögen, n., fortune
vermögen, to be able
vermummen, to mask
verpachten, to let out
Verräther, m., traitor
verschneien, to snow over
verständlich, sensible
versichern, to assure
versündigen, to sin
vertrauen, to confide
vertreiben, to disperse
verwerfen, to reject
Verzweiflung, f., despair
vorbereitet, prepared
Vogel, m., bird
Volk, n., people
vollkommen, perfect
vorig, last, past

W.

wach, awake
wachsen, to grow (increase)
Waffe, f., arm, weapon
Wagschaal, f., scale, balance
während, during
Waizen, m., wheat
wandeln, to wander (travel about)
Wärme, f., warmth
Wäsche, pl., linen
Wäscherin, f., laundress [change
Wechsel, m., change, bill of ex-

weder, whether
Weg, m., way
wegschmeissen, to throw away
wegwerfen, to cast away
weiden, to tend a flock (delight)
Wein, m., wine
weinen, to weep (cry)
weise, wise
Weisheit, f., wisdom
weiss, knowest
weit, far
Welle, f., wave
Welttheil, m., part of the world
Wetter, n., weather
Werk, n., work
wichtig, important
Wissenschaft, f., knowledge
Wildness, f., wilderness
Winternacht, f., winter night
Witz, m., wit
Wochenblatt, n., weekly paper
Woge, f., billow
Wohlthat, f., benefit, favour
wohlthätig, charitable
Wohlthäter, m., benefactor
wohlthun, to do well
Wohnung, f., dwelling
Wolle, f., wool
wünschen, to wish
Wurzel, f., root

Z.

zugen, to be afraid (delay)
Zahl, f., number
zahn, tame
Zauberflusz, m., magic flow
Zauberpferd, n., magic horse
zaudern, to tarry
Zeit, f., time
zeitlich, temporary, temporal
Zeuge, m., witness
Zeugniss, n., certificate, testimony
zerstieben, to vanish
Zeichen, n., sign
zeichnen, to draw (mark)
Ziel, n., aim, limit
Zimmer, n., room
Zwerg, m., dwarf
zufrieden, contented, satisfied
Zufriedenheit, f., contentment
zugaben, to admit
zupfen, to pull
zurückweichen, to recoil
zusammen, together
zutragen (sich), to happen
Zuthat, f., addition
zuwider, contrary
Zwang, m., constraint

ENGLISH—GERMAN VOCABULARY.

A.

Accompany, *begleiten*
 Action, *Handlung*, f.
 Admire, *bewundern*
 Africa, *Afrika*, n.
 Ambassador, *Gesandte*, m.
 Amount, *Betrag*, m.
 Amusing, *unterhaltend*
 April, *April*, m.
 Arrived, *angekommen*
 Assize Court, *Gerichtshof*, m.
 Assurance, *Versicherung*, f.
 Attentive, *aufmerksam*

B.

Battlearray, *Schlachtordnung*, f.
 Beloved, *geliebt*
 Benevolent, *wohlthätig*
 Bird, *Vogel*, m.
 Blue, *blau*
 Body, *Körper*, m.
 Bonnet, *Hut*, m.
 Bottle, *Flasche*, f.
 Brave, *brav*
 Bulwark, *Bollwerk*, n.

C.

Celebrated, *berühmt*
 Charles, *Karl*
 Cigar, *Zigarre*, f.
 Company, *Gesellschaft*, f.
 Consists, *besteht*
 Counsel, *Rath*, m.
 County, *Grafschaft*, f.
 Courage, *Mühe*, m.
 Creator, *Schöpfer*, m.
 Cultivated, *bebaut*

D.

Dance, *tanzen*
 Departure, *Abreise*, f.
 Does, *macht*, *thut*
 Doubt, *Zweifel*, m.
 Doubt (to), *zweifeln*
 Dress, *Kleid*, n.

Drink, *Trinken*, n.
 Drink (to), *trinken*
 Duke, *Herzog*, m.

E.

Education, *Erziehung*, f.
 Emily, *Emilie*
 Emperor, *Kaiser*, m.
 Enemy, *Feind*, m.
 England, *England*, n.
 Englishman, *Engländer*, m.
 Error, *Fehler*, *Irrthum*, m.
 Esteem, *Achtung*, f.
 Esteemed, *geachtet*
 Europe, *Europa*, n.
 Exchange, *Börse*, f.
 Exercise, *Aufgabe*, f., *Lektion*, f.
 Expense, *Ausgabe*, f.
 Extend (to), *ausdehnen*

F.

Family, *Familie*, f.
 Farewell, *Lebewohl*, n.
 February, *Februar*, m.
 Feeble, *schwach*
 Field, *Feld*, n.
 Fire, *Feuer*, n.
 Forgive, *vergeben*
 France, *Frankreich*, n.

G.

Gave, *gab*
 Generosity, *Groszmüthigkeit*, f.
 Gently, *sachte*
 George, *Georg*
 Germany, *Deutschland*, n.
 Glory, *Rhum*, m.
 Go, *gehen*
 Goods, *Waare*, f.
 Good-luck, *Glück*, n.

H.

Hat, *Hut*, m.
 Henry, *Heinrich*
 Heroically, *heldemnützig*
 Holiday, *Feiertag*, *Spiehtag*, m.

Honour, *Ehre*, f.
 Horse-power, *Pferdekraft*, f.
 Hostile, *feindlich*
 Human, *menschlich*
 Hut, *Hütte*, f.

I.

Idler, *Faulenzer*, m.
 Ill-luck, *Unglück*, n.
 Imagine, *vorstellen*
 Indulgent, *nachsichtig*
 Inhabit, *bewohnen*
 Ink, *Tinte*, f.

J.

John, *Johann*
 Journey, *Reise*, f.
 June, *Juni*, m.

K.

Kettle, *Kessel*, m.
 Kindness, *Güte*, f.
 Knowing, *wissend*

L.

Labour, *Werk*, n., *Arbeit*, f.
 Lacedemonian, *Lacedemonier*
 Law, *Gesetz*, n.
 Lawyer, *Advokat*, m.
 Learned, *gelehrt*
 Life, *Leben*, n.
 Likeness, *Ähnlichkeit*, f.
 Look, *sehen*
 Loss, *Verlust*, m.
 Lost, *verloren*

M.

May, *Mai*, m.
 Means, *meint*
 Miser, *Geizhals*
 Mountains (chains of), *Gebirge*,
 Murder, *Mord*, m., [n.]

N.

News, *Neuigkeit*, f.
 Newspaper, *Zeitung*, f.

O.

Odious, *gehässig*
 Open, *offen*

P.

Pain, *Schmerz*, m.
 Paper, *Papier*, n.

Park, *Park*, m.
 Part, *Theil*, m. and n.
 Pencil, *Bleistift*, m.
 Physic, *Arznei*, f.
 Plant, *Pflanze*, f.
 Polite, *höflich*
 Prudent, *bescheiden*

R.

Rain, *Regen*, m.
 Ray, *Strahl*, m.
 Reading, *Lesen*, n.
 Regiment, *Regiment*, n.
 Reject, *verwerfen*
 Repose, *ausruhen*
 Resolution, *Entschluss*, m.
 Ruler, *Herrscher*, m.
 Rural, *ländlich*

S.

Sad, *traurig*
 Scotland, *Schottland*, n.
 Seaside, *Seeküste*, f.
 Servant, *Bediente*, m., *Magd*, f.
 Ship, *Schiff*, n.
 Sign, *Zeichen*, n.
 Slaughter, *Schlachten*, n.
 Society, *Gesellschaft*, f.
 Solitude, *Einsamkeit*, f.
 Sorrow, *Kummer*, m.
 Spoken, *gesprochen*
 Staircase, *Treppe*, f.
 Stand, *Stand*, m., *Stelle*, f.
 Step, *Schritt*, m., *Stufe*, f.
 Strict, *streng*
 Sum, *Summe*, f.
 Summer, *Sommer*, m.

T.

Thanks, *Dank*, m.
 Time, *Zeit*, f.
 Told, *gesagt*
 Troops, *Truppen*, pl.
 Truth, *Wahrheit*, f.

V.

Venice, *Venedig*, n.

W.

Way, *Weg*, m.
 William, *Wilhelm*
 Witness, *Zeuge*, m.



